



Operations Guide | PUBLIC

Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 SP16

Document Version: 2.6.0 – 2023-10-09

# System Copy for SAP ABAP Systems Based on Windows : SAP HANA 2.0 Database - Using Software Provisioning Manager 2.0

This Guide is Valid for SAP Systems based on the Following SAP Product Versions:

- SAP S/4HANA 2023
- SAP S/4HANA 2022
- SAP S/4HANA 2021
- SAP S/4HANA 2020
- SAP S/4HANA 1909
- SAP S/4HANA 1809
- SAP BW/4HANA 2021
- SAP BW/4HANA 2.0

THE BEST RUN



# Content

<b>1</b>	<b>About this Document - System Copy for SAP ABAP Systems Based on Windows : SAP HANA 2.0 Database - Using Software Provisioning Manager 2.0. ....</b>	<b>7</b>
1.1	About the software provisioning manager 2.0. ....	8
	SAP Product Options Supported by Software Provisioning Manager 2.0. ....	10
1.2	Naming Conventions. ....	11
1.3	New Features. ....	13
1.4	Constraints. ....	15
1.5	Accessing the SAP Online Documentation. ....	18
<b>2</b>	<b>Use Cases for System Copy. ....</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>System Copy Methods. ....</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Quick Guide for Homogeneous system copy of SAP HANA Database Using Backup and Recovery. ....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>Planning. ....</b>	<b>24</b>
5.1	Planning the System Copy. ....	24
	Creating a System Copy Plan. ....	24
	Basic Planning Aspects and Parameters. ....	25
5.2	Planning the Target System. ....	27
	Planning Checklist. ....	27
	Before You Start. ....	29
	Installation Options Covered by this Guide. ....	29
	Hardware and Software Requirements. ....	39
	Planning User and Access Management. ....	44
	Domain or Local Installation. ....	45
	Basic Installation Parameters. ....	46
	SAP System Transport Host. ....	60
<b>6</b>	<b>Preparation. ....</b>	<b>62</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>General Technical Preparations for the System Copy. ....</b>	<b>63</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Preparing the Target System Installation. ....</b>	<b>65</b>
8.1	Preparation Checklist. ....	65
8.2	Installing the SAP HANA Target Database. ....	66
8.3	Setting Connectivity Data for the SAP HANA Database. ....	67
8.4	Disabling the Windows Server Firewall on Windows Server. ....	67
8.5	Performing Basic Windows Preparation Steps. ....	68

8.6	Required User Authorization for Running Software Provisioning Manager. . . . .	70
8.7	Using Virtual Host Names. . . . .	72
8.8	Preparing the SAP System Transport Host. . . . .	73
8.9	Installing the SAP Front-End Software. . . . .	74
8.10	Configuring Host Names for the SAP HANA Database. . . . .	74
8.11	Establishing Secure Connection to the SAP HANA Database. . . . .	75
	Applying Self-signed Certificates while Running the Software Provisioning Manager. . . . .	75
	Configuring SAP HANA Encryption Parameters. . . . .	76
8.12	Checking Time Zones. . . . .	77
8.13	Preparing the Installation Software. . . . .	77
	Downloading and Extracting the Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 Archive. . . . .	79
	Downloading the SAP Kernel Archives. . . . .	80
	Downloading Software Packages for a Maintenance Planner Transaction. . . . .	83
	Downloading the SAP HANA Database Software. . . . .	85
<b>9</b>	<b>System Copy Procedure. . . . .</b>	<b>88</b>
9.1	Creating and Transferring the SAP HANA Database Backup. . . . .	88
	Creating the Backup of the SAP HANA Source Database System. . . . .	89
	Transferring the Backup to the SAP HANA Target Database System.. . . .	90
9.2	Installing the Target System. . . . .	90
	Installation Checklist. . . . .	90
	Specifying the Initial Data Source of the User Management Engine. . . . .	93
	Prerequisites for Running Software Provisioning Manager. . . . .	93
	Running Software Provisioning Manager. . . . .	95
	Additional Information about Software Provisioning Manager. . . . .	99
9.3	Copying Single Instances Only. . . . .	113
	Copying the Primary Application Server Instance Only. . . . .	113
	Copying the Database Only – Refresh Database Content. . . . .	114
<b>10</b>	<b>Follow-Up Activities. . . . .</b>	<b>116</b>
10.1	Performing Follow-Up Activities in the Source System. . . . .	116
10.2	Performing Follow-Up Activities in the Target System. . . . .	116
	Post-Installation Checklist. . . . .	116
	Logging On to the Application Server ABAP. . . . .	118
	Performing Follow-Up Activities for ABAP. . . . .	119
	Enabling SAP EarlyWatch Alert for ABAP Systems on SAP HANA. . . . .	125
	Installing the SAP License. . . . .	126
	High Availability: Setting Up Licenses. . . . .	128
	Configuring the Remote Connection to SAP Support. . . . .	129
	Enabling Note Assistant to Apply Note Corrections. . . . .	129
	Performing the Consistency Check. . . . .	129
	Creating Symbolic Links on Windows Server for Application Servers. . . . .	131

	Configuring the Change and Transport System. . . . .	132
	Connecting the System to SAP Solution Manager. . . . .	134
	Applying the Latest Kernel and Support Package Stacks. . . . .	136
	Installing Additional Languages and Performing Language Transport. . . . .	137
	Configuring the User Management. . . . .	138
	Ensuring User Security. . . . .	139
	Performing the Client Copy. . . . .	141
	Installation or Upgrade of SAP HANA Studio. . . . .	142
	Follow-Up Activities for the SAP HANA Database. . . . .	142
	Changing Keys for the Secure Storage. . . . .	145
	Performing a Full System Backup. . . . .	146
	Logging on to the SAP Web Dispatcher Management Console. . . . .	146
	SAP Web Dispatcher Configuration (Optional). . . . .	148
	Gateway Configuration. . . . .	148
10.3	Performing a Full System Backup. . . . .	149
10.4	Logging on to the SAP Web Dispatcher Management Console. . . . .	150
10.5	SAP Web Dispatcher Configuration (Optional). . . . .	151
10.6	Gateway Configuration. . . . .	152
<b>11</b>	<b>Additional Information. . . . .</b>	<b>154</b>
11.1	Integration of LDAP Directory Services. . . . .	154
11.2	SAP Directories. . . . .	158
11.3	Performing a Domain Installation Without Being a Domain Administrator. . . . .	162
11.4	Checking and Changing the Paging File Settings on Windows Server . . . . .	163
11.5	Installation of Multiple Components in One Database. . . . .	165
11.6	Starting and Stopping the SAP System. . . . .	167
11.7	Configuring the Windows Server Firewall after SAP installation. . . . .	169
11.8	SAP System Security on Windows. . . . .	171
11.9	Automatic Creation of Accounts and Groups. . . . .	173
11.10	Uninstalling an SAP System or Single Instances. . . . .	174
11.11	Stub Installation of an SAP ABAP Application Server Instance. . . . .	177
<b>12</b>	<b>Target System Installation - High Availability with Microsoft Failover Clustering. . . . .</b>	<b>179</b>
12.1	High Availability with Microsoft Failover Clustering. . . . .	179
	Checklist for a High-Availability System. . . . .	181
	Planning. . . . .	183
	Preparation. . . . .	201
	Installation. . . . .	201
	Post-Installation. . . . .	208
	Additional Information. . . . .	208

# Document History

## i Note

Before you start reading, make sure you have the latest version of this installation guide, which is available at: <https://help.sap.com/viewer/swpm20guides>

The following table provides an overview on the most important document changes:

Version	Date	Description
2.6.0	2023-10-09	Updated version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP16 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP39)  Windows operating systems no longer supported for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP16 and higher, according to SAP Note <a href="#">2998013</a> , have been removed.
2.5.1	2023-10-09	Updated version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP15 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP38): Last version containing information about no longer supported Windows operating systems according to SAP Note <a href="#">3346547</a> .
2.5.0	2023-05-26	Updated version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP15 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP38)
2.4.0	2023-02-13	Updated version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP14 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP37)
2.3.0	2022-10-10	Updated version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP13 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP36)  Operating systems and CPU architectures no longer supported according to SAP Note <a href="#">2998013</a> have been removed.
2.2.1	2022-10-10	Updated version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP12 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP35): Last version containing information about no longer supported operating system or CPU according to SAP Note <a href="#">2998013</a> .
2.2.0	2022-05-24	Updated version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP12 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP35)
2.1.0	2022-02-14	Updated version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP11 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP34)
2.0.0	2021-10-11	Updated version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP10 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP33)

Version	Date	Description
1.9.0	2021-06-21	Updated version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP09 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP32)
1.8.0	2021-02-15	Updated version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP08 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP31)
1.7.0	2020-10-05	Updated version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP07 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP30)
1.6.0	2020-06-08	Updated version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP06 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP29)
1.5.0	2020-01-20	Updated version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP05 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP28)
1.4.0	2019-09-16	Updated version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP04 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP27)
1.3.0	2019-05-27	Updated version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP03 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP26)
1.2.0	2019-01-21	Updated version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP02 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP25)
1.1.0	2018-09-17	Updated version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP01 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP24)
1.0.0	2018-04-23	Initial version for software provisioning manager 2.0 SP00 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP23)

# 1 About this Document - System Copy for SAP ABAP Systems Based on Windows : SAP HANA 2.0 Database - Using Software Provisioning Manager 2.0

This document describes how to perform a homogeneous system copy of SAP Application Server ABAP systems using the software provisioning manager **2.0** SP16 on **Windows** .

It covers the following SAP ABAP system product releases (see also [SAP Product Options Supported by Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 \[page 10\]](#)):

- SAP S/4HANA Server 2023
- SAP S/4HANA Server 2022
- SAP S/4HANA Foundation 2023
- SAP S/4HANA Foundation 2022
- SAP S/4HANA Server 2021
- SAP S/4HANA Foundation 2021
- SAP S/4HANA Server 2020
- SAP S/4HANA Foundation 2020
- SAP S/4HANA Server 1909
- SAP S/4HANA Foundation 1909
- SAP S/4HANA Server 1809
- SAP ABAP Foundation 1809 on SAP HANA (also named as “foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA” or “ ABAP PLATFORM 1809 - Application Server ABAP”)
- SAP BW/4HANA 2021
- SAP BW/4HANA 2.0
- SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 Support Release 1)  
(Out of Maintenance as of December 2021)

## ⚠ Caution

As SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 Support Release 1 is out-of maintenance since December 2021, all deployment options for this product were removed from software provisioning manager 2.0 SP14 and higher. If you still want to deploy SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 Support Release 1, you must use software provisioning manager 2.0 SP12. For more information, see SAP Note [3220857](#).

For information about supported operating system and database platforms, see the Product Availability Matrix at <https://support.sap.com/pam>.

The procedure described in this guide uses **SAP HANA database**-specific methods on the source system and the target system installation is done using [software provisioning manager 2.0 SP16 \[page 8\]](#), which is part of SL Toolset 1.0 SP39.

For a detailed list of SAP system products and releases supported by software provisioning manager 2.0, see [SAP Product Options Supported by Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 \[page 10\]](#) and SAP Note [2568783](#).

For information about supported operating system and database platforms, see the Product Availability Matrix at <https://support.sap.com/pam>.

### Note

As an alternative to using Software Provisioning Manager, you can copy or refresh your system with a completely automated end-to-end framework available using SAP Landscape Management. For more information, see SAP Note [1709155](#) and [https://help.sap.com/docs/SAP\\_LANDSCAPE\\_MANAGEMENT\\_ENTERPRISE](https://help.sap.com/docs/SAP_LANDSCAPE_MANAGEMENT_ENTERPRISE).

[About the software provisioning manager 2.0 \[page 8\]](#)

[Naming Conventions \[page 11\]](#)

[New Features \[page 13\]](#)

[Constraints \[page 15\]](#)

[Accessing the SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#)

## 1.1 About the software provisioning manager 2.0

The software provisioning manager 2.0 is the new release of the software provisioning manager 1.0. The software provisioning manager as such is the successor of the product- and release-specific delivery of provisioning tools, such as SAPinst and R3setup.

Make sure that you read the most recent version of SAP Note [2568783](#) (*Release Note for Software Provisioning Manager 2.0*).

Before you run the software provisioning manager 2.0, we recommend that you always download the latest version of it. The software provisioning manager 2.0 is - as the software provisioning manager 1.0 - part of the Software Logistics Toolset 1.0 ("SL Toolset" for short) which is quarterly shipped. This way, you automatically get the latest fixes and supported processes. For more information about the software provisioning manager 2.0 as well as products and releases supported by it, see SAP Note [2568783](#) and <http://scn.sap.com/docs/DOC-30236>.

## Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 Versus Software Provisioning Manager 1.0

The software provisioning manager **2.0** SP16 is provided in parallel to the software provisioning manager **1.0** SP39. Both software provisioning manager versions are part of Software Logistics Toolset 1.0 SP 36. However, they cover system provisioning for different product versions. The decision matrix is as follows:

- The software provisioning manager **2.0** is used for:
  - **Installation, system copy, and system rename of ABAP single stack** systems on **SAP HANA 2.0** database, based on the following products:
    - SAP S/4HANA 2023

System Copy for SAP ABAP Systems Based on Windows : SAP HANA 2.0 Database - Using  
Software Provisioning Manager 2.0

About this Document - System Copy for SAP ABAP Systems Based on Windows : SAP  
HANA 2.0 Database - Using Software Provisioning Manager 2.0



- SAP S/4HANA 2022
- SAP S/4HANA 2021
- SAP S/4HANA 2020
- SAP S/4HANA 1909
- SAP S/4HANA 1809
- SAP BW/4HANA 2.0
- SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 Support Release 1 (Out of Maintenance)
- SAP Web Dispatcher installation and rename.

#### i Note

For SAP Web Dispatcher, you can either use the software provisioning manager **2.0** or the software provisioning manager **1.0**.

- SAP Host Agent standalone installation.

#### i Note

For SAP Host Agent standalone installation, you can either use the software provisioning manager **2.0** or the software provisioning manager **1.0**.

- The software provisioning manager **1.0** is used for:
  - Installation, system copy, system rename of SAP Solution Manager 7.X and Diagnostics Agent.
  - Installation of standalone engines and clients.

#### i Note

For SAP Web Dispatcher or SAP Host Agent standalone installation, you can either use the software provisioning manager **1.0** or the software provisioning manager **2.0**.

- Installation, system copy, system rename, and dual-stack split of SAP systems whose **database is not SAP HANA**.
- Installation, system copy, and system rename of **Dual-stack** and **Java single stack** systems.
- Installation, system copy, and system rename of **ABAP single stack** systems whose database is **SAP HANA** database, but whose release is one of the following:
  - **SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 or lower**
  - **SAP S/4HANA 1709 or lower**
  - **SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP 7.52 or lower**

For more information, see <https://blogs.sap.com/2018/05/15/software-provisioning-manager-1.0-vs.-software-provisioning-manager-2.0/>.

## Naming Conventions

“SAPinst” has been renamed to “software provisioning manager”, but the terms “SAPinst” and “sapinst” are still used in:







- The name of the technical framework of the software provisioning manager (currently 753). For more information about the current SAPinst framework 753, see SAP Note [3207613](#).




- Texts and screen elements in the software provisioning manager GUI
- Names of executables, for example `sapinst.exe`
- Names of command line parameters, for example `SAPINST_HTTPS_PORT`



In this documentation, we generally refer to “software provisioning manager”. We only use the term “software provisioning manager 2.0” if there is a significant difference compared to “software provisioning manager 1.0”.

## 1.1.1 SAP Product Options Supported by Software Provisioning Manager 2.0

Here you can find the list of SAP product options supported by Software Provisioning Manager 2.0.

SAP Product	Based on
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SAP S/4HANA Server 2023</li> </ul>	<p>SAP S/4HANA Foundation 2023, comprising ABAP PLATFORM 2023 - Application Server ABAP</p> <p>For product details see the <a href="#">Product Availability Matrix (PAM)</a>  (Logon to SAP Support Portal required)</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SAP S/4HANA Server 2022</li> </ul>	<p>SAP S/4HANA Foundation 2022, comprising ABAP PLATFORM 2022 - Application Server ABAP</p> <p>For product details see the <a href="#">Product Availability Matrix (PAM)</a>  (Logon to SAP Support Portal required)</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SAP S/4HANA Server 2021</li> </ul>	<p>SAP S/4HANA Foundation 2021, comprising ABAP PLATFORM 2021 - Application Server ABAP</p> <p>For product details see the <a href="#">Product Availability Matrix (PAM)</a>  (Logon to SAP Support Portal required)</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SAP S/4HANA Server 2020</li> </ul>	<p>SAP S/4HANA Foundation 2020, comprising ABAP PLATFORM 2020 - Application Server ABAP</p> <p>For product details see the <a href="#">Product Availability Matrix (PAM)</a>  (Logon to SAP Support Portal required)</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SAP S/4HANA Server 1909</li> </ul>	<p>SAP S/4HANA Foundation 1909, comprising ABAP PLATFORM 1909 - Application Server ABAP</p> <p>For product details see the <a href="#">Product Availability Matrix (PAM)</a>  (Logon to SAP Support Portal required)</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SAP S/4HANA Server 1809</li> </ul>	<p>SAP ABAP Foundation 1809 on SAP HANA (also named as “foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA” or “ ABAP PLATFORM 1809 - Application Server ABAP”)</p> <p>For product details see the <a href="#">Product Availability Matrix (PAM)</a>  (Logon to SAP Support Portal required)</p>

SAP Product	Based on
SAP BW/4HANA 2021	SAP BW/4HANA Server  For product details see the <a href="#">Product Availability Matrix (PAM)</a>  (Logon to SAP Support Portal required)
SAP BW/4HANA 2.0	SAP BW/4HANA Server  For product details see the <a href="#">Product Availability Matrix (PAM)</a>  (Logon to SAP Support Portal required)
SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 Support Release 1 (Out of Maintenance since December 2021)	SAP NetWeaver 7.5  For product details see the <a href="#">Product Availability Matrix (PAM)</a>  (Logon to SAP Support Portal required)

 **Caution**  
 All deployment options for this product were removed from software provisioning manager 2.0 SP14 and higher. If you still want to deploy SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 Support Release 1, you must use the “frozen” software provisioning manager 2.0 SP12. For more information, see SAP Note [3220857](#) .

## More Information

For more information about **recommended application server platforms**, see SAP Note [2620910](#) .

## 1.2 Naming Conventions

This section contains the naming conventions used in this documentation.

- “software provisioning manager” refers to “software provisioning manager 2.0” and to “software provisioning manager” in general.
- “SAP system” or “ABAP system” refers to SAP systems based on:
  - SAP S/4HANA Server 2022 (based on SAP S/4HANA Foundation 2022)

### i Note

For the sake of simplicity, in the following we abbreviate this product as ABAP Platform 2022.

- SAP S/4HANA Server 2021 (based on SAP S/4HANA Foundation 2021)

#### i Note

For the sake of simplicity, in the following we abbreviate this product as ABAP Platform 2021.

- SAP S/4HANA Server 2020 (based on SAP S/4HANA Foundation 2020)

#### i Note

For the sake of simplicity, in the following we abbreviate this product as ABAP Platform 2020.

- SAP S/4HANA Server 1909 (based on SAP S/4HANA Foundation 1909)

#### i Note

For the sake of simplicity, in the following we abbreviate this product as ABAP Platform 1909.

- SAP S/4HANA Server 1809 (based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA)

#### i Note

For the sake of simplicity, in the following we abbreviate this product as ABAP Platform 1809.

- SAP BW/4HANA 2.0 (based on SAP BW/4HANA Server 2.0)
- SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 **Support Release 1**.

#### i Note

For the sake of simplicity, in the following we abbreviate this product as SAP BW/4HANA.

- *System Copy*

Duplication of an SAP system. Certain SAP parameters might change in a copy. When you perform a system copy, the software provisioning manager installs all the instances again, but it uses a copy of the source system database to set up the database.

- *Source System and Target System*

The SAP system containing the original database is called the **source system** and the system to which the database copy is to be imported is called the **target system**. Their SAP system names are abbreviated to SOURCE\_SAPSID and TARGET\_SAPSID. The terms source database and target database are also used in this description.

- *Homogeneous System Copy*

During homogeneous system copy, you use the same operating system and database platform as the original system.

- *Heterogeneous System Copy*

During heterogeneous system copy, you change either the operating system or the database system, or both. *Heterogeneous system copy* is a synonym for migration.

This method is **not** described in this documentation because it is not supported by [Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 \[page 8\]](#).

- *Database Copy*

Database-dependent part of the system copy.

- *Placeholders*

Placeholders such as <SAPSID> are used in commands. They are used in the same way as in the SAP system installation documentation. You must replace them with the values valid for your site.

The following additional placeholders are used:

Placeholder	Meaning	How to find out
<SAPSID>	SAP system ID	—
<S_HOST>	System name of the source host	Command <code>hostname</code>
<T_HOST>	System name of the target host	Command <code>hostname</code>
<S_SAPSID>	SAP system ID of the source system	<SAPSID> of the original system
<T_SAPSID>	SAP system ID of the target system	<SAPSID> of the target system
<S_DBSID>	Database ID of the source system	<DBSID> of the original system
<T_DBSID>	Database ID of the target system	<DBSID> of the target system

#### i Note

Database ID <DBSID> identifies the database instance. The software provisioning manager prompts you for the <DBSID> when you are installing the database instance.





The <DBSID> can be the same on IBM i as the <SAPSID>.

## 1.3 New Features

The sections below provide an overview of the new features of the software provisioning manager 2.0.

Make sure that you also read the [Release Notes](https://help.sap.com) for your SAP product at <https://help.sap.com> > <Search your SAP Product> > <Select your SAP Product Version> > [What's New](#) >.

Feature	Description	Availability
Separate SAP Globalhost	During the installation of an SAP system distributed over several hosts, you can now specify that the SAP Global directories are installed on a host different from the ASCS instance host. For more information, see SAP Note <a href="#">3349121</a> .	software provisioning manager 1.0 SP39 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP39)
Stub Installation of an SAP ABAP Application Server Instance	The Stub installation sets up an application server instance structure without SAP HANA-specific activities such as database user creation, or ABAP report invocations. For more information, see <a href="#">Stub Installation of an SAP ABAP Application Server Instance [page 177]</a> .	software provisioning manager 2.0 SP14 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP37)

Feature	Description	Availability
New SAPinst Framework Version 753	The SAPinst framework patch level has been upgraded from version 749 (SAP Note <a href="#">2393060</a>  ) to 753. For more information, see SAP Note <a href="#">3207613</a>  .	software provisioning manager 2.0 SP13 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP36)
Support of SAP HANA SSL Certificates	Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 supports SAP HANA SSL Certificates for configuring secure access to the SAP HANA database.  For more information, see <a href="#">Establishing Secure Connection to the SAP HANA Database [page 75]</a> .	software provisioning manager 2.0 SP06 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP29)
SAP applies "secure by default" settings during system installation and system copies	As of SAP S/4HANA 1909 and SAP S/4HANA Foundation 1909, SAP applies "secure by default" settings during system installation and system copies. Depending on the SAP S/4HANA release, the scope of "secure by default" might change. Settings affect the profile parameters, ABAP platform configurations and HANA auditing. Customers have the option of skipping the activation of the secure profile parameters. Due to the nature of the settings, ABAP platform configurations and HANA auditing are always enabled.  For more information about SAP S/4HANA secure by default settings, see SAP Note <a href="#">2926224</a>  .	software provisioning manager 2.0 SP04 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP27)
Support of Secure Connection to SAP HANA database.	Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 supports configuring the SAP system to be installed to access the SAP HANA database using encryption.  For more information, see <a href="#">Establishing Secure Connection to the SAP HANA Database [page 75]</a> .	software provisioning manager 2.0 SP03 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP26)
New Look and Feel of SL Common GUI	As of version 2.0 SP01 Patch Level (PL) 5, the software provisioning manager comes with a new look and feel of the SL-UI. For more information, see <a href="https://blogs.sap.com/2018/11/10/new-look-for-software-provisioning-manager/">https://blogs.sap.com/2018/11/10/new-look-for-software-provisioning-manager/</a>  .	software provisioning manager 2.0 SP01, PL05 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP24)

Feature	Description	Availability
Support of Standalone Enqueue Server 2 and Enqueue Replicator 2	<p>For SAP systems based on ABAP Platform 1809 and higher, Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 installs the ASCS instance by default with the new Standalone Enqueue Server <b>2</b>, and the ERS instance with the new Enqueue Replicator <b>2</b>.</p> <p>For more information about the Standalone Enqueue Server <b>2</b> and the Enqueue Replicator <b>2</b>, see the <a href="#">SAP Online Documentation [page 18]</a> at <a href="#">Application Server ABAP Infrastructure</a> &gt; <a href="#">Components of the Application Server for ABAP</a> &gt; <a href="#">SAP Lock Concept</a> &gt; <a href="#">Standalone Enqueue Server 2</a>.</p>	software provisioning manager 2.0 SP01 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP24)
ABAP Platform 1809 or higher: Archive-Based Installation of all Installation Software	For SAP systems based on ABAP Platform 1809 or higher, the database server and client software is provided as installation archives, which you can download from <a href="https://launchpad.support.sap.com/#/softwarecenter">https://launchpad.support.sap.com/#/softwarecenter</a> . Physical SAP HANA 2.0 database server and client media, as well as physical database installation export media and language media are no longer required for the installation.	software provisioning manager 2.0 SP01 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP24)
Homogeneous System Copy	The software provisioning manager 2.0 only supports homogeneous system copy using a SAP HANA database backup.	software provisioning manager 2.0 SP00 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP23)
New Software Provisioning Manager Option <a href="#">Download Software Packages for Maintenance Planner Transaction</a>	If you perform an installation using a stack configuration file, you can now download the required software packages according to a Maintenance Plan. For more information, see <a href="https://blogs.sap.com/2018/06/01/software-provisioning-manager-new-option-for-standalone-download-service/">https://blogs.sap.com/2018/06/01/software-provisioning-manager-new-option-for-standalone-download-service/</a> .	software provisioning manager 2.0 SP00 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP23)
Validity Check for SUM* .SAR Archive	If you perform an installation using a stack configuration file and choose to extract the SUM* .SAR archive, the validity of this archive is now checked by the software provisioning manager.	software provisioning manager 2.0 SP00 (SL Toolset 1.0 SP23)

## 1.4 Constraints

This section contains the constraints valid for the system copy procedures described in this documentation.

- Effective immediately, the software provisioning manager no longer supports the deprecated Windows operating system versions [2998013](#) listed in SAP Note [2998013](#).

### i Note

- If your current operating system is listed as deprecated in SAP Note [2998013](#), we strongly recommend that you migrate to a supported platform.
  - If you continue to run Software Provisioning Manager on the deprecated Windows operating system versions listed in SAP Note [2998013](#), you do so at your own risk and without support from SAP. The software provisioning manager 2.0 SP16 and higher will still run on the deprecated Windows operating system versions listed in SAP Note [2998013](#) but it may run into an error. When you start the software provisioning manager, you will see a warning like the following: *"Platform Support : Support for SAP JVM on Windows Server 2012 (R2) ends October 31th, 2023. See SAP note 2998013."* If you run into an issue, you must use the "frozen" software provisioning manager **2.0 SP15** software and the related system copy guide. For more information, see SAP Note [3346547](#).
- Effective immediately, the software provisioning manager no longer supports the deprecated operating system versions [2998013](#) listed in SAP Note [2998013](#).

### i Note

- If your current operating system is listed as deprecated in SAP Note [2998013](#), we strongly recommend that you migrate to a supported platform.
  - If you continue to run Software Provisioning Manager on the deprecated operating system versions listed in SAP Note [2998013](#), you do so at your own risk and without support from SAP. The software provisioning manager 2.0 SP13 and higher will still run on the deprecated operating system versions listed in SAP Note [2998013](#) but it may run into an error. When you start the software provisioning manager, you will see a warning like the following: *"Platform Support : Support for SAP JVM on Windows Server 2008 (R2) ends January 14th, 2022. See SAP note 2998013."* If you run into an issue, you must use the "frozen" software provisioning manager **2.0 SP12** software and the related system copy guide. For more information, see SAP Note [3220857](#).
- Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 is only supported for SAP HANA 2.0 database.
  - Only perform a system copy if you have experience in copying systems and thorough knowledge of the operating system, the database, and the ABAP Dictionary . Only perform a heterogeneous system copy (of a production, development, or test (QA) system) if you are a certified system support consultant or a certified SAP Technical Consultant.
  - SAP does **not** support client transport as a system copy method. Transporting production clients is not supported at all. You can use client transport for the initial setup of an SAP system infrastructure. This documentation does **not** cover the client copy procedure.
  - This documentation does **not** describe how to export and import a database with the installation tools for reorganization purposes. Use the appropriate tools for database reorganization, as SAP does not support this installation option.
  - If you have made modifications in your development system and want to copy your quality assurance or production system onto the development system, see **SAP Note** [130906](#).
  - This documentation describes how to copy data from one SAP system to another SAP system based on SAP Netweaver Application Server. This documentation does not describe how to copy data from non-SAP systems to SAP systems.
  - SAP does not support all data archiving operations after a system copy.



If you used data archiving in the source system, you might not always have access from the target system to the archive files that were created. For more information, see **SAP Note 153433** and *Data Management Landscape & Transformation Solutions* at <https://support.sap.com/dm&lt>. Access from the target system to archived files in the source system without a dedicated archive migration project is only supported as follows:

- You have copied a source system that uses external data archiving. The target system has read-only access to this archive.
- You have copied a source system that uses data archiving locally. You can either arrange network access for appropriate archive file sharing or copy all archive files to the file system of the target system.

### i Note

#### **Only valid for SAP Business Warehouse:**

If you use ADK-based archiving of request administration data in SAP Business Warehouse, you have to copy all archive files related to archiving object BWREQARCH to the file system of the target system. Only then write access (like deletion of requests, deletion of the complete data target content, further upload of data to other targets, changing the quality status of requests or `InfoProvider rebuild`) to requests with archived administration data is possible in the target system of the copy.

In all other cases, contact *Data Management Landscape & Transformation Solutions* at <https://support.sap.com/dm&lt>.

- When you perform a system copy, all product instances or usage types in the source system are copied to the target system. This means that none of the product instances or usage types in the target system can be excluded from the system copy, nor can you select product instances or usage types.
- “Dos and Don'ts” for system copy:
  - **Do:**
    - Follow the Open SQL standard.
    - Make sure that all communication runs through the database pool.
  - **Don't:**
    - Save any system and infrastructure-specific data in business objects. Use a pointer to the central storage of such information, for example:
      - SAP system ID and SID (SAPSID = SID = SAP system name)
      - Host name
      - IP addresses
      - Services and ports
      - Logical destinations and logical system names
      - Other technical infrastructure names
    - Use file system persistency.
    - Set up dependencies between Java and ABAP.

## 1.5 Accessing the SAP Online Documentation

This section contains the paths for the product-specific online documentation referenced from this documentation.

The references to the SAP Online Documentation in this guide always refer to the following on the SAP Help Portal:

- SAP systems based on SAP S/4HANA Foundation 2021 ("ABAP Platform 2021" for short):  
<https://help.sap.com/s4hana> > <2021 Latest> > Discover > Product Assistance > SAP S/4HANA > Enterprise Technology > ABAP Platform
- SAP systems based on SAP S/4HANA Foundation 2020 ("ABAP Platform 2020" for short):  
<https://help.sap.com/s4hana> > <2020 Latest> > Discover > Product Assistance > SAP S/4HANA > Enterprise Technology > ABAP Platform
- SAP systems based on SAP S/4HANA Foundation 1909 ("ABAP Platform 1909" for short):  
<https://help.sap.com/s4hana> > <1909 Latest> > Discover > Product Assistance > SAP S/4HANA > Enterprise Technology > ABAP Platform
- SAP systems based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA ("ABAP Platform 1809" for short):  
<https://help.sap.com/s4hana> > <1809 Latest> > Discover > Product Assistance > SAP S/4HANA > Enterprise Technology > ABAP Platform
- SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2021:  
[https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP\\_BW4HANA](https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_BW4HANA) > 2021 <Current SP> > Application Help > SAP BW/4HANA > Application Server for ABAP > ABAP Platform
- SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0:  
[https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP\\_BW4HANA](https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_BW4HANA) > 2.0 <Current SP> > Application Help > SAP BW/4HANA > Application Server for ABAP > ABAP Platform
- SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (<SP08 or higher>):  
[https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP\\_BW4HANA](https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_BW4HANA) > 1.0 <SP08 or higher> > Application Help > SAP BW/4HANA > Application Server for ABAP > SAP NetWeaver Library: Function-Oriented View

## 2 Use Cases for System Copy

You can apply the system copy for the following:

- Setting up system landscapes, where the SAP systems have different system IDs (<SAPSID>).
- Providing systems for testing, demonstration, training, and standby.

### i Note

You should perform a system copy in a test system first. This way you can identify customer-specific problems that might result from modifications.

- Changing the operating system.  
You can use different operating system releases for the source and target systems, but the SAP system release of the source and target systems must be the same.
- Changing the hardware.
- Disaster recovery from an existing database backup

### i Note

You can set up the SAP system infrastructure (development, quality assurance, and production system) **without** making a system copy as follows:

1. Install all SAP systems, starting with the development system. Customize the development system as described in the implementation documentation.
2. Transport the client-dependent and client-independent data to the quality assurance and production systems.

However, if you do not follow this concept, you can also install a system, customize it, and then perform a system copy.

# 3 System Copy Methods

You can choose between the following system copy methods:

## i Note

Before making your decision, read the documentation *SAP System Copy and Migration* at <https://wiki.scn.sap.com/wiki/display/SL/System+Copy+and+Migration> in order to make yourself familiar with the available system copy and migration procedures.

- **Homogeneous system copy of SAP HANA database using backup and recovery**

For more information, see [Quick Guide for Homogeneous system copy of SAP HANA Database Using Backup and Recovery \[page 21\]](#).

- **Copy single instances only**

The following options are supported:

- You can **move a primary application server instance** to a different host within your system. For more information, see [Copying the Primary Application Server Instance Only \[page 113\]](#).
- You can **refresh the content of an existing database** without having to export the database content, but **using a database backup**.

## → Recommendation

We recommend that you use option [Refresh Database Content](#) if you need to equalize the database content of two or more already existing and configured systems, for example in automatized system landscapes with “template” systems which have to correspond to precisely defined standards, such as predefined host names, network settings, users, security policies.

For more information, see [Copying the Database Only – Refresh Database Content \[page 114\]](#).

## ⚠ Caution

You **cannot** copy single product instances, usage types, or components!

- **Changing the system variant**

If you want to change your system variant (for example, if you want to make your standard system a distributed or high-availability system), proceed as follows:

1. Create a database backup.
2. For the import, choose the relevant system copy options as described in the process flows of the *System Copy Procedure*.

For more information, see [Quick Guide for Homogeneous system copy of SAP HANA Database Using Backup and Recovery \[page 21\]](#).

# 4 Quick Guide for Homogeneous system copy of SAP HANA Database Using Backup and Recovery

This quick guide describes the basic steps of the procedure of the homogeneous system copy of SAP HANA database using backup and recovery . Detailed information about the steps are available in the linked sections.

## i Note

If the target system already exists and you only want to replace the content of the database, see [Copying the Database Only – Refresh Database Content \[page 114\]](#).

## Prerequisites

- Your source system is an SAP system with SAP HANA as the primary database.
- You have installed SAP HANA Studio and added the source system using [Add System](#) on the [Systems](#) view.
- The version of the SAP HANA database server and SAP HANA Studio must have at least Version 2.0.
- The platform of the source database must have the same endianness as the platform of the target database. Thus, homogeneous system copies using backup and recovery are only possible with the following operating system platforms:

Platform of the source database	Supported platform of the target database
Linux on Intel-based hardware platforms	Linux on Intel-based hardware platforms
	Linux on IBM Power Systems (Little-Endian)
Linux on IBM Power Systems (Big-Endian)	Linux on IBM Power Systems (Big-Endian)
Linux on IBM Power Systems (Little-Endian)	Linux on Intel-based hardware platforms
	Linux on IBM Power Systems (Little-Endian)

For more details, see the following sections:

- [Planning the System Copy \[page 24\]](#).
- [Planning the Target System \[page 27\]](#).

## Context

This section describes a scenario such as the following: You want to copy the BW system PRD connected to the database PR1 to the BW system DEV connected to the database DV1. The name of the ABAP schema in PR1

is SAPPRD. Therefore, PRD is the source system (the system that is to be copied), PR1 is the source database (the database system that is to be copied), DEV is the target system (the copied system), and DV1 is the target database (the target database system). SAPPRD is the (database) schema (the schema name) or the database user of the system.

## Procedure

1. Install the target system with the target database.

The version of the target database must be the same as or higher than the version of the source database.

For more information, see [Preparation \[page 62\]](#).

2. Create a database backup using the SAP HANA Database Studio.

For more information, see [Creating the Backup of the SAP HANA Source Database System \[page 89\]](#).

- a. In the SAP HANA Studio, right-click on the **SYSTEMDB** database of the system to be copied, and choose **Backup Tenant Database...**
- b. Select **Complete Data Backup** as the Backup Type and select **File** or **Backint** as **Destination Type**.

If you select **File** as the **Destination Type**, proceed as follows: Under **Backup Destination**, specify the directory in which you want to store the backup files.

For both backup types, proceed as follows: Under **Backup Prefix**, specify a prefix for the backup file.

- c. Ensure that the backup directory contains sufficient free space for the backup and that no backup that has the same prefix already exists there.
- d. Choose **Next**.
- e. Check your entries and choose **Finish** to start the backup or choose **Back** to correct your entries.
- f. Wait until the backup has been created and then close the dialog box.

For more information, see the *SAP HANA Administration Guide* at [http://help.sap.com/hana\\_platform](http://help.sap.com/hana_platform) ►  
► **System Administration** ►.

3. Transfer the backup to the target database system.

Copy all files of the backup to the directory that can be read from the target database system. The backup files are located in the directory of the source database system that is specified in step 1 and begin with the prefix that is specified in step 1.

For more information, see [Transferring the Backup to the SAP HANA Target Database System. \[page 90\]](#).

4. Run the software provisioning manager to install the target system and to import the backup.
  - a. Start the software provisioning manager as described in [Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 95\]](#).
  - b. On the **Welcome** screen, choose ► **<Product> <Product Version> ► <Database> ► System Copy ► Target System ► <Distribution Option> ►**.
  - c. Follow the instructions in the software provisioning manager input screens and enter the required parameters.
    - In the **SAP System Database** screen, choose **Homogeneous System Copy (SAP HANA-specific Backup/Recovery)**.
    - In the **Database Schema** screens, enter the schema names and the passwords that match the data in the backup. For example, if you install a DEV system and use a backup of the PRD system for the

installation, you must specify SAPPRD as the schema in the screens instead of SAPDEV. The same applies to the DBA Cockpit schema.

- In the *Database Recovery* screens, first enter the password of the <sapsid>adm user of the target database and the related SAPControl URL.  
The system prefills the SAPControl URL. It usually does not have to be changed. In addition, select *File* or *Backint* as the *Destination Type* in accordance with the backup type created in step 1.
- In the next screen, enter the directory and the name (prefix) of the backup. As the directory, enter the directory to which you copied the backup files in step 2. As a prefix enter the prefix of the backup that you chose in step 1. In the case of a Backint backup, enter the database SID <DBSID> of the source system. In the case of a file backup, you can also specify whether you want the system to check whether the backup exists. If this check is deactivated and the backup does not exist, the installation will terminate with an error at a later time.
- In the SAP HANA License screen, you can then choose whether or not you want to install a new SAP HANA license in the target database system. A new license is required because the backup that is to be implemented in the target database system derives from another source database, that is the hardware or the <DBSID> has changed.

For more information, see [Installing the Target System \[page 90\]](#).

5. Perform follow-up activities:

a. Check the secondary database connections

After you have copied the database, the target system has the same database connections - for example, for the DBA Cockpit as the source system - this might cause problems. Therefore, you must check the database connections in transaction DBCO and adjust them if required.

b. Check the RFC connections

After you have copied the database, the target system has the same RFC connections as the source system; this may cause problems. Therefore, you must check the RFC connections in transaction SM59 and adjust them if required.

c. Check the spool configuration

After you have copied the database, the target system has the same spool configuration as the source system. Therefore, you must check the spool configuration in transaction SPAD and adjust it if required.

d. Changing the logical system name

If the System ID of the ABAP system has changed, use transaction BDL5 to change the logical system name.

e. Adjusting the SAP HANA calculation views

If you copied a BW system, you must adjust the SAP HANA calculation to the new system names views after the migration. This is done when calling the report RS\_BW\_POST\_MIGRATION with all options.

For more information, see:

- [Performing Follow-Up Activities in the Source System \[page 116\]](#)
- [Performing Follow-Up Activities in the Target System \[page 116\]](#)

# 5 Planning

1. You [plan the system copy \[page 24\]](#).
2. You [plan the installation of the target system \[page 27\]](#).

## Next Steps

[Preparation \[page 62\]](#)

## 5.1 Planning the System Copy

1. [Use Cases for System Copy \[page 19\]](#)
2. [System Copy Methods \[page 20\]](#)
3. [Creating a System Copy Plan \[page 24\]](#)
4. [Basic Planning Aspects and Parameters \[page 25\]](#)

## Next Steps

[Planning the Target System \[page 27\]](#)

### 5.1.1 Creating a System Copy Plan

Create a plan to perform the system copy.

## Procedure

1. When copying a system that contains production data, choose the moment for the copy carefully. This could be a month-end or year-end closing.
2. Consider the downtime of the source system (for preparations and copying) when planning the system copy.



3. Consider a test run.

Perform a test run of the system copy. You can use the time taken by the test run to calculate the system downtime:

- If you want your target system to replace your source system, try to perform a complete test run. This means that the entire database is exported from the source system, transferred to the target system, and imported there. System downtime is approximately equal to the total test time (that is, time for export, transport, and import).
- If you do not want to replace your source system, a partial test run (export of the entire database or parts of it) can be sufficient to calculate the system downtime. The source system is only down for the time of the export.

Calculating the system downtime is particularly important for very large databases (VLDB) or when tapes are being used. The test run is also to determine the amount of export data. Choose the best data transfer method (for example, FTP or tape). We recommend that you only perform read/write actions on local file systems.

4. Define a schedule for the test migration and the final migration.

## 5.1.2 Basic Planning Aspects and Parameters

This section provides information about basic planning aspects and parameters required for system copy.

### Source System Prerequisites

Your source system is an SAP system with SAP HANA as the primary database, you have installed SAP HANA Studio and added the source system using [Add System](#) on the [Systems](#) view.

- The version of the SAP HANA database server and SAP HANA Studio must have at least Version 2.0. For more information about SAP HANA Studio, see the *SAP HANA Administration Tools* section in the *SAP HANA Administration Guide* at [http://help.sap.com/hana\\_platform](http://help.sap.com/hana_platform) ►► [System Administration](#) ►.
- The platform of the source database must have the same endianness as the platform of the target database. Thus, homogeneous system copies via backup and recovery are only possible between the following platforms:

Platform of the source database	Supported platform of the target database
Linux on Intel-based hardware platforms	Linux on Intel-based hardware platforms
	Linux on IBM Power Systems (Little-Endian)
Linux on IBM Power Systems (Big-Endian)	Linux on IBM Power Systems (Big-Endian)
Linux on IBM Power Systems (Little-Endian)	Linux on Intel-based hardware platforms
	Linux on IBM Power Systems (Little-Endian)

## Configuration Analysis and Hardware Configuration

- In the event of a **major change in hardware configuration** (for example, new machine type, new hard disk configuration, new file system type), consult your SAP-authorized hardware partner.
- You need to determine the following:
  - Number of application servers
  - Expected size of the database
  - Additional disks or other hardware required
  - Required memory

### Note

Refer to the section on hardware and software requirements in the SAP system installation documentation to determine the system requirements.


## Choosing an SAP system ID

You can choose the new SAP system ID `<TARGET_SAPSID>` freely during a new installation.

### Caution



To meet the requirements of the Workbench Organizer, you must choose different SAP system IDs for different SAP systems.

Make sure that your SAP system ID:

- Is unique throughout your organization  
Do not use an existing `<SAPSID>` when installing a new SAP system.
- Consists of exactly three alphanumeric characters
- Contains only uppercase letters
- Has a letter for the first character
- Does not include any of the reserved IDs listed in **SAP Note 1979280** .
- If you want to install an additional application server instance, make sure that no Gateway instance with the same SAP System ID (SAPSID) exists in your SAP system landscape.

## SAP License

Once the installation is completed and the SAP system copy has been imported, you require a new license key for the target system. The license key of the source system is **not** valid for this system.

For more information about SAP license keys, see <http://support.sap.com/licensekey>  or **SAP Note 94998** .

## Archiving files

Data that has been archived in the source system (data that does not reside in the database but was moved to a different storage location using SAP Archive Management) must be made accessible in the target system. Adapt the file residence information in the target system.

For more information, see the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at [▶▶ <Release> ▶ Product Documentation ▶ Operations Guide ▶](#)

Access to archive files is platform-independent.

## When Using SAP Landscape Transformation Replication Server

If you use SAP Landscape Transformation Replication Server in your system landscape, we recommend that you stop replication and remove existing database triggers before you start the system copy. For more information about SAP Landscape Transformation Replication Server and its dependencies, see SAP Note [1605140](#).

## More Information

FAQ - System Copy and Migration at: <https://wiki.scn.sap.com/wiki/display/SL/FAQ+-+System+Copy+and+Migration>

## 5.2 Planning the Target System

This planning checklist guides you through the planning steps required for the target system installation.

[Planning Checklist \[page 27\]](#)

### 5.2.1 Planning Checklist

This section includes the planning steps that you have to complete for the following installation options.

- Standard, distributed, or high-availability system
- Additional application server instance

Detailed information about the steps are available in the linked sections.

## Prerequisites

1. You have planned your SAP system landscape according to the release-specific (Master) Installation Guide for your SAP NetWeaver application as described in [Before You Start \[page 29\]](#).
2. You have decided on your installation option (see [Installation Options Covered by this Guide \[page 29\]](#)).

## Standard, Distributed, or High-Availability System

### i Note

In a [standard system \[page 30\]](#), all mandatory instances except the database instance are normally installed on one host. Therefore, if you are installing a standard system, you can ignore references to other hosts.

The SAP HANA database is normally pre-installed by SAP partners before you start the installation. For more information about how to install the SAP HANA database on IBM Db2 for z/OS, see the [SAP HANA Server Installation and Update Guide](#) at [https://help.sap.com/hana\\_platform](https://help.sap.com/hana_platform) [▶▶ Implement ▶ Installation and Upgrade ▶](#). The database instance is remotely installed by the software provisioning manager from the primary application server host.

### i Note

You **cannot** install multiple SAP systems in a single tenant database (MCOD). Instead, you must use different tenant databases for each SAP System.

1. You [check the hardware and software requirements \[page 39\]](#) on every installation host.
2. You [plan how to set up user and access management \[page 44\]](#).
3. You identify [Basic SAP System Installation Parameters \[page 46\]](#).
4. You [decide whether you want to perform a domain or local installation \[page 45\]](#).
5. You [decide on the transport host to use \[page 60\]](#).
6. You decide whether you want to [integrate LDAP Directory Services in your SAP system \[page 154\]](#).
7. 

Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

To install a high-availability system with **Microsoft Failover Clustering**, you perform the [HA-specific planning steps \[page 181\]](#).

End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)
8. Continue with [Preparation \[page 65\]](#).

## Additional Application Server Instance

1. You check the [hardware and software requirements \[page 39\]](#) for every installation host on which you want to install one or more additional application server instances.
2. You identify [Basic SAP System Installation Parameters \[page 46\]](#).
3. Continue with [Preparation \[page 65\]](#).



## 5.2.2 Before You Start

Make sure that you have read the release-specific “Installation Guide” - also called “Master Guide” for SAP BW/4HANA - for your SAP S/4HANA application and the central release note [2568783](#) of Software Provisioning Manager 2.0, before you continue.

This guide is the central document leading you through the overall implementation process for your SAP system installation. It contains important information about the overall implementation sequence, that is activities you have to perform before and after the installation process described in this installation guide.

You can find a printed version of this guide in your installation package or you can download the latest version from <https://help.sap.com>.

The following table lists the “Installation Guide” - or “Master Guide” - of the SAP system application for which you can use this documentation, along with the available quick link or path to the appropriate download location:


Document	Internet Address
<i>Installation Guide – SAP S/4HANA &lt;1809 or higher&gt;</i>	<a href="https://help.sap.com/s4hana">https://help.sap.com/s4hana</a>  <i>&lt;Version 1809 or higher&gt; Product Documentation Installation Guide</i>
<i>Master Guide - SAP BW/4HANA &lt;1.0 SR1 or higher&gt;</i>	<a href="https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_BW4HANA">https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_BW4HANA</a>  <i>Installation and Upgrade</i>

## 5.2.3 Installation Options Covered by this Guide

This section shows the installation options covered by this installation guide. You have to decide what exactly you want to install because the steps you have to perform vary according to the installation option you choose.

### Note

Regardless of whether you are installing a standard, distributed, or high-availability system, the SAP HANA database is normally installed on a dedicated database server. It is normally pre-installed by SAP partners before you start the installation of the SAP system instances. During the installation of the SAP system, the software provisioning manager accesses the SAP HANA database remotely to perform the necessary database-specific installation steps.

For more information about how to install the SAP HANA database, see the [SAP HANA Server Installation and Update Guide](#) at [https://help.sap.com/hana\\_platform](https://help.sap.com/hana_platform)  *Implement Installation and Upgrade*.

After you have decided on the installation option that you want to use, continue with [Planning \[page 27\]](#).

## 5.2.3.1 Standard System

In a standard system, all main instances except the SAP HANA database instance run on a single host.

There are the following instances:

- ABAP Central services instance (ASCS instance)  
Contains the ABAP message server and the Standalone Enqueue Server

### i Note

#### ASCS instance with new “Standalone Enqueue Server 2” versus ASCS instance with classic “Standalone Enqueue Server”:

- **SAP systems based on ABAP Platform 1809 or higher:** By default, the ASCS instance is installed with the new Standalone Enqueue Server 2. From a Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 perspective, the installation procedure for the ASCS instance with “Standalone Enqueue Server 2” is the same as for the ASCS instance with the classic “Standalone Enqueue Server”, there are no additional or different installation parameters.

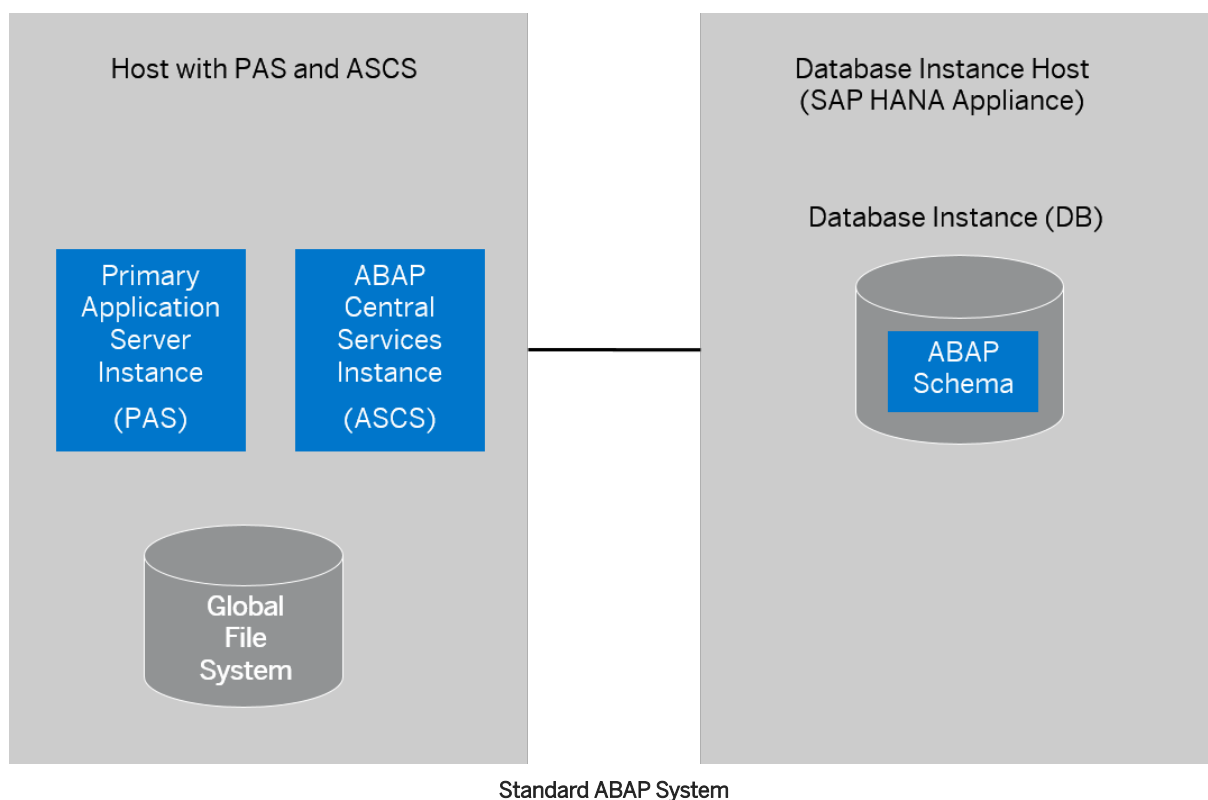
For more information, see the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at ► *Application Server ABAP Infrastructure* ► *Components of the Application Server for ABAP* ► *SAP Lock Concept* ► *Standalone Enqueue Server 2* ►.

- **SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (based on SAP NetWeaver 7.5):** The ASCS instance is installed with the classic “Standalone Enqueue Server” by default. You **cannot** switch to the new “Standalone Enqueue Server 2” after the installation has completed.

Since - from a Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 perspective - the “Standalone Enqueue Server 2” is installed with the ASCS instance the same way as the classic “Standalone Enqueue Server”, both are abbreviated as “Standalone Enqueue Server” in this documentation.

In a standard

- Optionally, you can install the ASCS instance with an embedded SAP Web Dispatcher. For more information, see [ASCS Instance with Embedded SAP Web Dispatcher \[page 35\]](#).
- Optionally, you can install the ASCS instance with an embedded gateway. For more information, see [ASCS Instance with Embedded Gateway \[page 37\]](#).
- SAP HANA database instance (DB)
- Primary application server instance (PAS instance)



### 5.2.3.2 Distributed System

An SAP system consists of SAP instances. An SAP instance is a group of processes that are started and stopped at the same time.

In a distributed system, every instance can run on a separate host.

A distributed system consists of the following instances:

- ABAP Central services instance (ASCS instance)  
Contains the ABAP message server and the Standalone Enqueue Server

#### i Note

**ASCS instance with new “Standalone Enqueue Server 2” versus ASCS instance with classic “Standalone Enqueue Server”:**

- **SAP systems based on ABAP Platform 1809 or higher:** By default, the ASCS instance is installed with the new Standalone Enqueue Server 2. From a Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 perspective, the installation procedure for the ASCS instance with “Standalone Enqueue Server 2” is the same as for the ASCS instance with the classic “Standalone Enqueue Server”, there are no additional or different installation parameters.

For more information, see the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at ► *Application Server ABAP Infrastructure* ► *Components of the Application Server for ABAP* ► *SAP Lock Concept* ► *Standalone Enqueue Server 2* ►.

- **SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (based on SAP NetWeaver 7.5):** The ASCS instance is installed with the classic “Standalone Enqueue Server” by default. You **cannot** switch to the new “Standalone Enqueue Server 2” after the installation has completed.

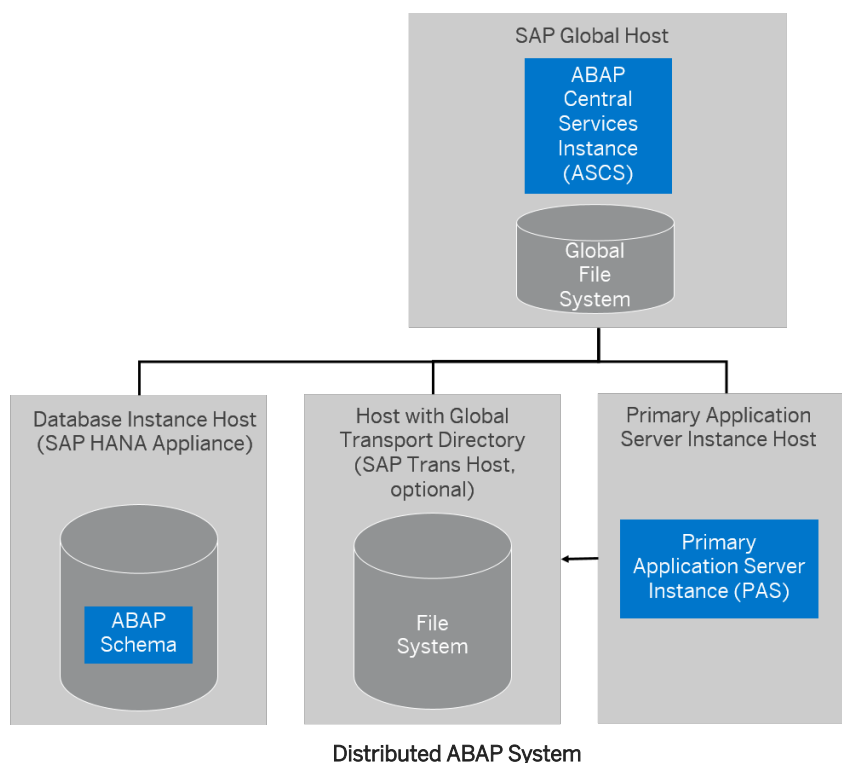
Since - from a Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 perspective - the “Standalone Enqueue Server 2” is installed with the ASCS instance the same way as the classic “Standalone Enqueue Server”, both are abbreviated as “Standalone Enqueue Server” in this documentation.

- Optionally, you can install the ASCS instance with an embedded SAP Web Dispatcher. For more information, see [ASCS Instance with Embedded SAP Web Dispatcher \[page 35\]](#).
- Optionally, you can install the ASCS instance with an embedded gateway. For more information, see [ASCS Instance with Embedded Gateway \[page 37\]](#).
- SAP HANA database instance (DB)  
The ABAP stack uses its own database schema in the database.
- Primary application server instance (PAS)

The following figure assumes the following:

- The ASCS and primary application server instance run on the SAP global host.
- You can also install the primary application server instance on a separate host.
- The global transport directory resides on a separate SAP transport host.
- During the installation of an SAP system distributed over several hosts, you can now specify that the SAP Global directories are installed on a host different from the ASCS instance host. For more information, see SAP Note [3349121](#).

Optionally, you can install one or more additional application server instances. For more information, see [Installation of an Additional Application Server Instance \[page 33\]](#).



### 5.2.3.3 High Availability System

For more information about the system components you have to install and how to distribute them on the specific hosts, see [System Configuration with Microsoft Failover Clustering \[page 183\]](#).



#### i Note

SAP HANA can also have HA solutions. For more information contact your hardware partner and see the SAP HANA overview in the SAP HANA Data Center, which is available at <http://www.saphana.com/docs/DOC-2010>.

### 5.2.3.4 Additional Application Server Instance

You can install one or more additional application server instances for an existing SAP system. Additional application server instances are optional and can be installed on separate hosts.

An additional application server instance can run on:

- The host of any instance of the existing SAP system
- On a dedicated host

#### i Note

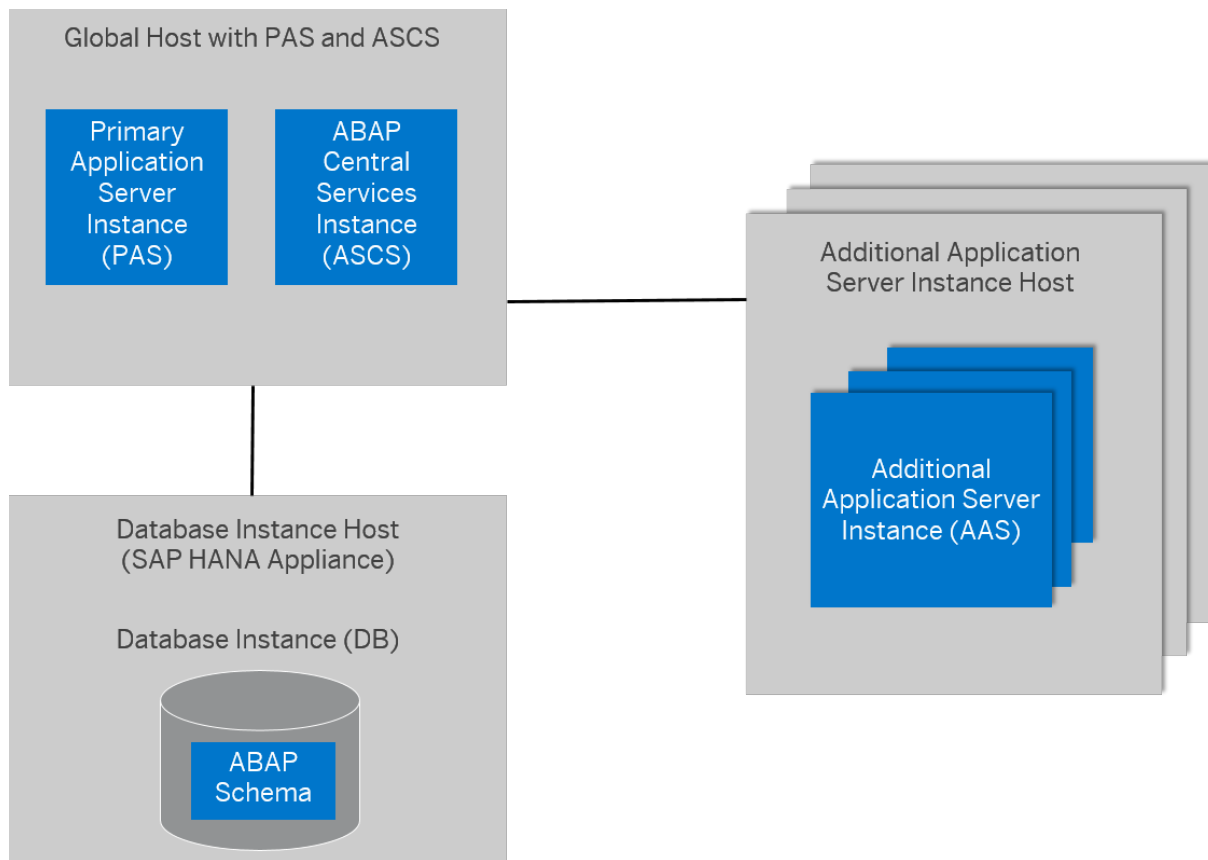
We do not recommend installing additional application server instances on the SAP global host.

#### i Note

If you want to install an additional application server instance on an existing SAP system, you must perform a domain installation. You must also make sure that your existing SAP system was installed as a domain installation. For more information, see [Domain or Local Installation \[page 45\]](#).

### Additional Application Server Instance for a Standard System

The following figure shows additional application server instances that are running on dedicated hosts.

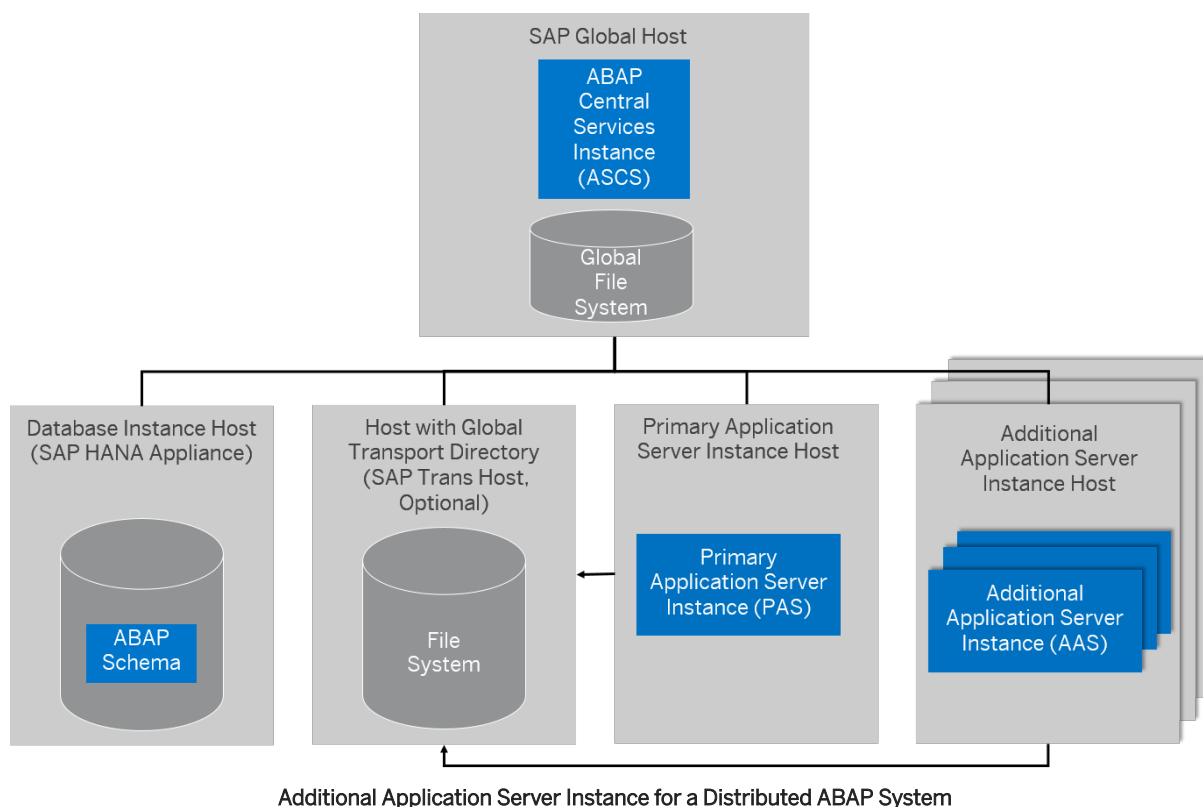


Additional Application Server Instance for a Standard ABAP System

For more information, see [Standard System \[page 30\]](#).

## Additional Application Server Instance for a Distributed System

The following figure shows additional application server instances that are running on dedicated hosts.



For more information, see [Distributed System \[page 31\]](#).

Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

## Additional Application Server Instance for a High-Availability System

In a high-availability system, you require, apart from the primary application server instance, at least one additional application server instance. For more information about how to install and distribute the application servers in an HA configuration, see section [System Configuration with Microsoft Failover Clustering \[page 183\]](#).

End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

### 5.2.3.5 ASCS Instance with Embedded SAP Web Dispatcher

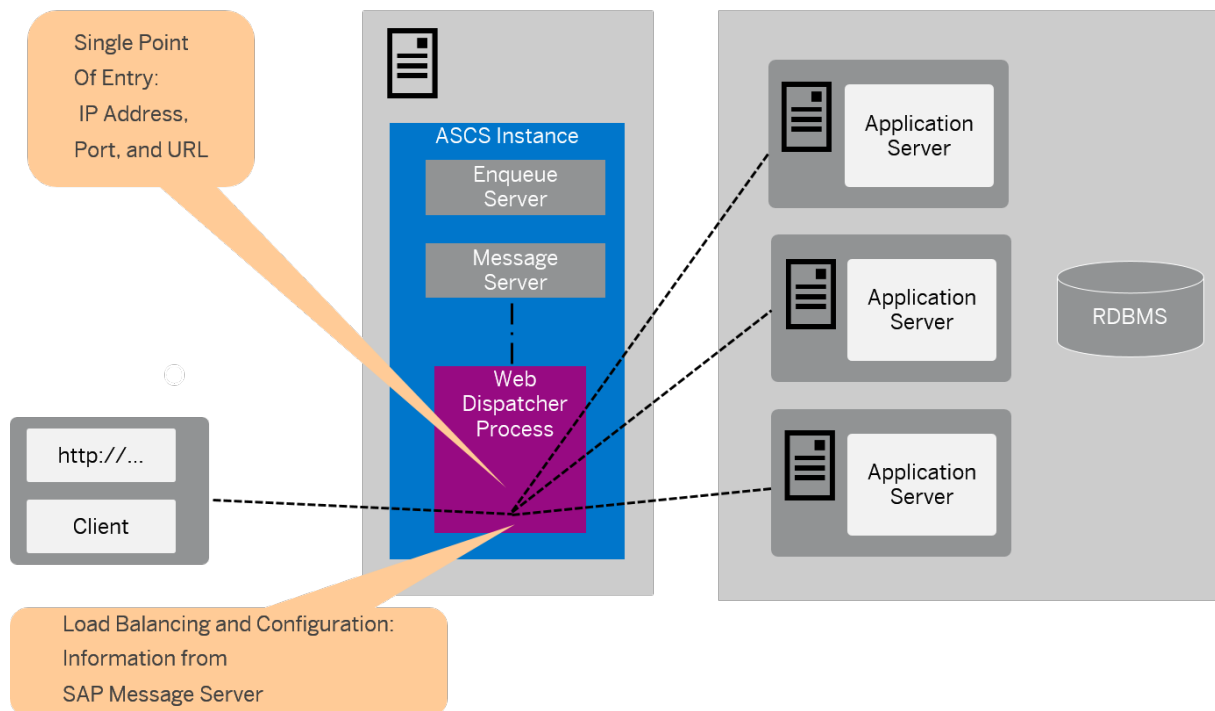
You can install an SAP Web Dispatcher embedded in the ASCS instance. If you select this option, an SAP Web Dispatcher is installed running within the ASCS instance. No separate SAP Web Dispatcher instance and no dedicated <SAPSID> are created for the SAP Web Dispatcher.

#### → Recommendation

The embedded SAP Web Dispatcher is subject to a number of limitations. For more information, see SAP Note [3115889](#). It is a convenience option for small systems, but is not recommended for production systems. The general recommendation is to install a standalone SAP Web Dispatcher instead.

## i Note

We only recommend this option for special scenarios. For more information, see SAP Note [908097](#). The embedded SAP Web Dispatcher is subject to a number of limitations. For more information, see SAP Note [3115889](#). It is a convenient option for small systems, but is not recommended for production systems. The general recommendation is to install a standalone SAP Web Dispatcher instead. For an SAP Web Dispatcher installation, a standalone installation (see below) continues to be the default scenario.



ASCS Instance with Embedded SAP Web Dispatcher

The SAP Web Dispatcher is located between the Web client (browser) and your SAP system that is running the Web application.

It acts as single point of entry for incoming requests (HTTP, HTTPS), defined by the IP address, port, and URL, and forwards them in turn to the application server (AS) of the SAP system.

The SAP Web Dispatcher receives information about the SAP system that it needs for load distribution (load balancing) from the message server and application server via HTTP.

## Installation of “Standalone” SAP Web Dispatcher with its own <SAPSID> and Instance

If you want to install an SAP Web Dispatcher for another system - that is not for the system for which you use the ASCS instance and with its own SAP system ID and instance number - you have to install SAP Web Dispatcher separately as described in the documentation [Installation of SAP Web Dispatcher on <OS> - Using Software Provisioning Manager 2.0](#) which you can find at <https://support.sap.com/sltoolset> >>> [Installation](#)

[Option of Software Provisioning Manager 2.0](#) ➤ [Installation Guides - SAP Web Dispatcher - Software Provisioning Manager 2.0](#) ➤.

## More Information

For more information about the architecture and the functions of SAP Web Dispatcher, see the SAP Web Dispatcher documentation in the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:

Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA ("ABAP Platform 1809" for short) <b>and higher</b>	➤ <a href="#">Application Server ABAP - Infrastructure</a> ➤ <a href="#">Components of Application Server ABAP</a> ➤ <a href="#">SAP Web Dispatcher</a> ➤ <a href="#">Administration of the SAP Web Dispatcher</a> ➤
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0	➤ <a href="#">Application Server ABAP - Infrastructure</a> ➤ <a href="#">Components of Application Server ABAP</a> ➤ <a href="#">SAP Web Dispatcher</a> ➤ <a href="#">Administration of the SAP Web Dispatcher</a> ➤
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (<SP08 or higher>)	➤ <a href="#">Application Server</a> ➤ <a href="#">Application Server Infrastructure</a> ➤ <a href="#">Components of SAP NetWeaver Application Server</a> ➤ <a href="#">SAP Web Dispatcher</a> ➤ <a href="#">Administration of the SAP Web Dispatcher</a> ➤

## Related Information

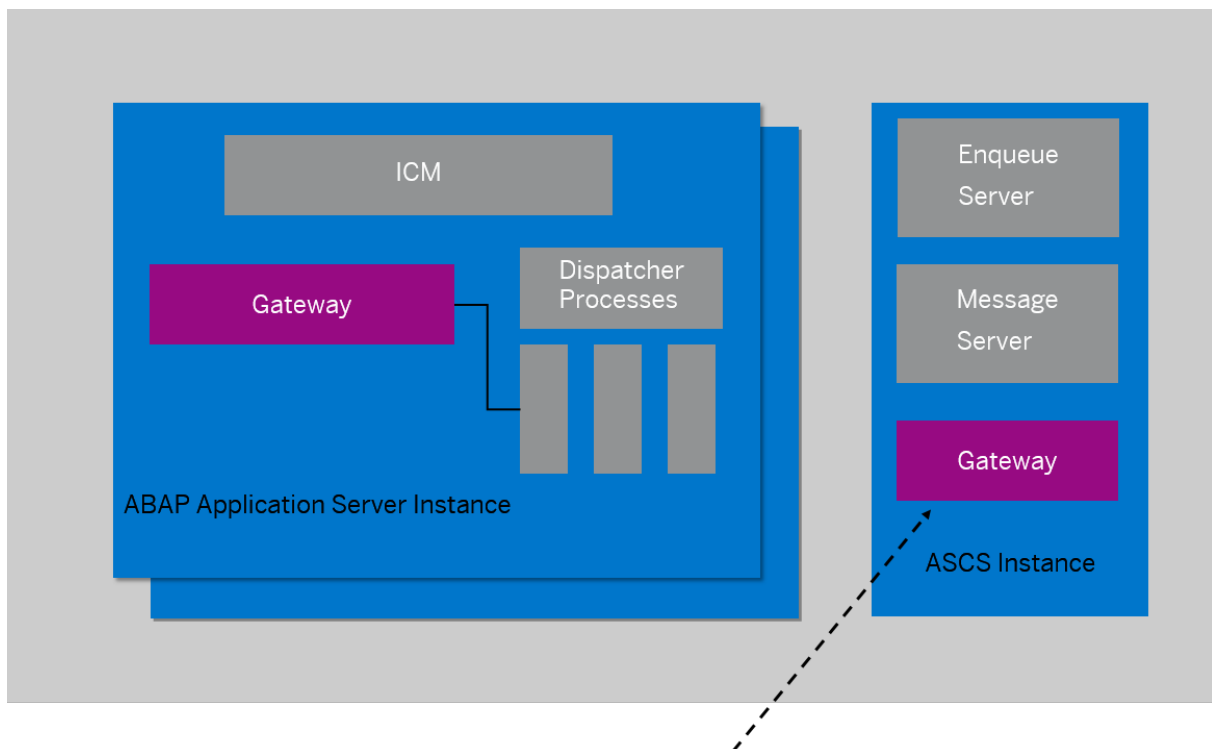
[Parameters for Additional Components to be Included in the ASCS Instance \[page 59\]](#)

### 5.2.3.6 ASCS Instance with Embedded Gateway

You can install a gateway embedded in the ASCS instance. If you select this option, a gateway is installed **within the ASCS instance**.

#### i Note

**No separate standalone gateway instance and no dedicated <SAPSID>** are created for the gateway.



SAP Gateway Integrated in ASCS Instance

Gateway Embedded in the ASCS Instance

The gateway enables communication between work processes and external programs, as well as communication between work processes from different instances or SAP systems.

#### → Recommendation

A gateway embedded in the ASCS instance is recommended, for example, when you set up a Microsoft Failover Cluster.

You can also install a **standalone** gateway instance. For more information, see the documentation [Installation Guide – Installation of a Standalone Gateway Instance for SAP Systems Based on SAP NetWeaver 7.1 to 7.5x](#) at <https://support.sap.com/sltoolset> >> [Installation Option of Software Provisioning Manager 1.0](#) > [Installation Guides - Standalone Engines and Clients - Software Provisioning Manager 1.0](#) > [Standalone Gateway Instance](#).

#### ⚠ Caution

In Microsoft Failover Cluster installations, do **not** install a **standalone** gateway on cluster nodes. Instead, follow the instructions in SAP Note [1764650](#).

For more information on how to configure a **standalone** gateway in an ASCS instance for High-Availability, see SAP Note [1010990](#).

## Related Information

[High Availability with Microsoft Failover Clustering \[page 179\]](#)

[Parameters for Additional Components to be Included in the ASCS Instance \[page 59\]](#)

## 5.2.4 Hardware and Software Requirements

Ensure that your hosts meet the hardware and software requirements for your operating system and the SAP instances. Otherwise you might experience problems when working with the SAP system.

### Prerequisites

- Make sure that the host name meets the requirements listed in SAP Note [611361](#).
- Contact your OS vendor for the latest OS patches.

### Procedure

1. Check the [Product Availability Matrix](#) at <http://support.sap.com/pam> for supported operating system releases.
2. Check the hardware and software requirements using:
  - The **Prerequisite Checker**:
    - Standalone (optional) before the installation process  
For more information, see [Running the Prerequisites Check Standalone \[page 40\]](#).
    - Integrated in the installation tool (mandatory) as part of the installation process  
For more information, see [Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 95\]](#).
  - The hardware and software requirements tables in [Requirements for the SAP System Hosts \[page 41\]](#)
3. If you want to install a **production** system, the values provided by the Prerequisite Checker and the hardware and software requirements checklists are not sufficient. In addition, do the following:
  - You use the **Quick Sizer** tool available at <http://sap.com/sizing>.
  - You contact your hardware vendor, who can analyze the load and calculate suitable hardware sizing depending on:
    - The set of applications to be deployed
    - How intensively the applications are to be used
    - The number of users

## 5.2.4.1 Running the Prerequisites Check in Standalone Mode (Optional)

This section describes how to run the prerequisites check in standalone mode. Running the prerequisites check in standalone mode is optional.

### Context

When you install an SAP system, the software provisioning manager automatically starts the prerequisites check and checks the hardware and software requirements in the background. As an optional step during planning, you can also run the prerequisites check in standalone mode to check the hardware and software requirements for your operating system and the SAP instances before the actual installation.

#### → Recommendation

We recommend that you use **both** the prerequisites check and the requirements tables for reference.

### Procedure

1. Download and unpack the Software Provisioning Manager archive to a local directory as described in [Downloading and Extracting the Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 Archive \[page 79\]](#).
2. Make either the separate `SAPEXE<Version>.SAR` archive or the complete kernel medium available as described in [Downloading the SAP Kernel Archives \[page 80\]](#).
3. Start the software provisioning manager as described in [Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 95\]](#).
4. On the [Welcome](#) screen, choose **> <SAP\_Product> > <Database> > Preparations > Prerequisites Check >**.
5. Follow the instructions in the software provisioning manager dialogs and enter the required parameters.

#### i Note

To find more information on each parameter during the [Define Parameters](#) phase, position the cursor on the required parameter input field, and choose either **F1** or the [HELP](#) tab. Then the available help text is displayed in the [HELP](#) tab.

After you have finished, the [Parameter Summary](#) screen appears. This screen summarizes all parameters that you have entered and that you want to have checked. If you want to make a change, select the relevant parameters and choose [Revise](#).

6. To start the prerequisites check, choose [Next](#).



## Results

The *Prerequisite Checker Results* screen displays the results found. If required, you can also check the results in file `prerequisite_checker_results.html`, which you can find in the installation directory.

## Related Information

[Downloading and Extracting the Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 Archive \[page 79\]](#)


[Downloading the SAP Kernel Archives \[page 80\]](#)

### 5.2.4.2 Requirements for the SAP System Hosts

#### Hardware and Software Requirements

The following tables show the hardware and software requirements. Most of the requirements are valid for every installation host whereas some requirements are instance-specific and are marked accordingly.

##### Note

- The listed values are sufficient for **development systems** or **quality assurance systems** but **not** for **production systems**.
- If you install several SAP instances on one host, you need to add up the requirements.
- For up-to-date information on the released and supported operating system versions for your SAP product and database, see the *Product Availability Matrix (PAM)* at: <http://support.sap.com/pam> .

## Hardware Requirements

Hardware Requirement	Requirement	How to Check
Minimum disk space	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ABAP central services instance (ASCS) (not including paging file): 5 GB (x64) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you install the ASCS instance with an embedded SAP Web Dispatcher, for the installation as such you require at least 1 GB of hard disk space in addition. For production use of the SAP Web Dispatcher, you need to reserve at least 5 GB.</li> <li>If you install an SAP Gateway with the ASCS instance, you require at least 1 GB of hard disk space in addition.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)  <b>High Availability only:</b> Enqueue replication server instance (ERS) (not including paging file): 5 GB (x64)  End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows) </li> <li>Primary application server instance (not including paging file): 5 GB (x64)</li> <li>Additional application server instance (not including paging file): 2.5 GB (x64)</li> <li>SAP Host Agent: 256 MB</li> <li>Temporary disk space for every required installation medium that you have to copy to a local hard disk: Up to 6 GB</li> </ul>	<p>To check disk space:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Open PowerShell in elevated mode, and enter the following command:  <code>get-volume</code> </li> <li>Check the value <i>SizeRemaining</i> of the disk you want to install on.</li> </ol>
Minimum RAM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All instances, except SAP Host Agent: 4 GB  If you install the ASCS instance with an embedded SAP Web Dispatcher, see SAP Note <a href="#">2007212</a> for memory consumption in productive use.</li> <li>SAP Host Agent: 0.5 GB</li> </ul>	<p>To check RAM:</p> <p>Open PowerShell in elevated mode, and enter the following command:</p> <pre>Get-WmiObject Win32_ComputerSystem</pre>
Paging file size	For more information, see SAP Note <a href="#">1518419</a> .	<p>To check paging file size:</p> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">Checking and Changing the Paging File Settings on Windows Server [page 163]</a></p>

Hardware Requirement	Requirement	How to Check
Processing units	<p><b>For application server instances and database instances:</b></p> <p>The number of physical or virtual processing units usable by the operating system image must be equal to or greater than 2.</p> <p><b>For an ASCS instance running on a separate host:</b> One physical or virtual processing unit usable by the operating system image might be sufficient.</p> <p>Examples of processing units are processor cores or hardware threads (multithreading).</p> <p>In a virtualized environment, ensure that adequate processor resources are available to support the workloads of the running SAP systems.</p>	
Suitable backup system		
Software Requirements		
Software Requirement	Requirement	How to Check
Windows operating system	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>64-bit version</b> of one of the following Windows Server Editions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Windows Server Standard Edition</li> <li>• Windows Server Datacenter Edition</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <div> <b>⚠ Caution</b>  For up-to-date information on the released and supported operating system versions for your SAP product and database, see the Product Availability Matrix (PAM) at <a href="http://support.sap.com/pam">http://support.sap.com/pam</a>. </div> <div> <b>⚠ Caution</b>  Make sure that you install the <b>English</b> language pack so that your support requests can be handled quickly. </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For any version of Windows Server, you need the latest supported service pack</li> </ul>	<p>To check your Windows version:</p> <p>Open PowerShell in elevated mode, and enter the following command:</p> <pre>Get-WmiObject Win32_OperatingSystem   select caption</pre> <div>Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)</div> <div> <b>i Note</b>  You must add the operating system feature <i>Failover Clustering</i> on <b>all</b> cluster nodes. </div> <div>End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)</div>

Software Requirement	Requirement	How to Check
Important information about the delivery of Microsoft Visual C++ redistributables (VCredist) versions with software provisioning manager 1.0	The software provisioning manager 1.0 no longer delivers any VCredist versions that are no longer in maintenance by the manufacturer Microsoft. SAP cannot therefore assume maintenance responsibility for these 3rd party components. At the time of delivery, this affects VCredist 2005 and 2010. As a result, a manual subsequent installation of the VCredist files by the customer may be required during the installation of SAP kernels that are based on these specified versions. For more information, see SAP Note <a href="#">1553465</a> - <i>Installation requirements for SAP kernels on Windows (C++ runtime environment, VCredist versions)</i>	–
Windows regional settings	<p><i>English (United States)</i> must be set by default. For more information about localized Windows versions, see SAP Note <a href="#">362379</a>.</p> <p>You can install additional languages but the default setting for new users must always be <i>English (United States)</i>.</p>	Choose ► <i>Start</i> ► <i>Control Panel</i> ► <i>Clock, Language, and Region</i> ► <i>Language</i> ►
Minimum Web Browser	<p>Make sure that you have at least one of the following web browsers installed on the host where you run the software provisioning manager GUI:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Microsoft Internet Explorer 11 or higher</li> <li>• Microsoft Edge</li> <li>• Mozilla Firefox</li> <li>• Google Chrome</li> </ul> <p>Always use the latest version of these web browsers.</p> <p>You need a web browser to be able to run the SL-UI, and to display the Evaluation Form and send it to SAP.</p>	Choose ► <i>Start</i> ► <i>Control Panel</i> ► <i>Programs and Features</i> ►

## 5.2.5 Planning User and Access Management

You have to plan how to configure user and access management for the SAP system to be installed.

Before you add a newly installed SAP system to your system landscape, you must decide which kind of user management you want to use:

- Central User Administration (CUA)

- An LDAP directory as the data source for user data

## Procedure

To specify the initial data source of the User Management Engine (UME), proceed as described in [Specifying the Initial Data Source of the User Management Engine \[page 93\]](#).

## More Information

For more information about configuring the user management of your SAP system to be installed, see the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:

Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA ("ABAP Platform 1809" for short) <b>and higher</b>	<a href="#">Securing the ABAP Platform</a> > <a href="#">ABAP Platform Security Guide</a> > <a href="#">User Administration and Authentication</a> > <a href="#">User Management</a> > <a href="#">Identity Management</a> > <a href="#">User and Role Administration of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">Configuration of User and Role Administration</a> > <a href="#">Directory Services</a> > <a href="#">Configuring Connection Data for the Directory Service</a> > <a href="#">Configuring Connection Data with the LDAP Connector</a> > <a href="#">Configuring the LDAP Connector</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0	<a href="#">Securing the ABAP Platform</a> > <a href="#">ABAP Platform Security Guide</a> > <a href="#">User Administration and Authentication</a> > <a href="#">User Management</a> > <a href="#">Identity Management</a> > <a href="#">User and Role Administration of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">Configuration of User and Role Administration</a> > <a href="#">Directory Services</a> > <a href="#">Configuring Connection Data for the Directory Service</a> > <a href="#">Configuring Connection Data with the LDAP Connector</a> > <a href="#">Configuring the LDAP Connector</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (<SP08 or higher>)	<a href="#">Security</a> > <a href="#">Identity Management</a> > <a href="#">User and Role Administration of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">Configuration of User and Role Administration</a> > <a href="#">Directory Services</a> > <a href="#">LDAP Connector</a>

## 5.2.6 Domain or Local Installation

Before you install the SAP system, you have to decide whether you want to perform a **domain** or **local** installation, since this affects how the user account information is stored and accessed.

For more information about the differences between a local and domain installation, go to ► [Start](#) ► [Help and Support](#) ► and search for *What is the difference between a domain and a workgroup?*.

## Domain Installation

In a domain installation, the user account information is stored centrally in one database on the domain controller and is accessible to all hosts in the system.

You have to perform a domain installation if one of the following applies:

- You install a distributed system.
- Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

You install a high-availability system with Microsoft Failover Clustering.

End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)
- You use a common transport host for several SAP systems running on different computers.

## Local Installation

In a local installation, all Windows account information is stored locally on one host and is not visible to any other hosts in the system.

### i Note

If your SAP system was installed as a local installation and you want to later change to a domain installation, you can use the system rename option. For more information, see the *System Rename Guide* for your SAP system at:

<https://support.sap.com/sltoolset> ► [System Provisioning](#) ►

## More Information

[Required User Authorization for Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 70\]](#)

## 5.2.7 Basic Installation Parameters

The software provisioning manager prompts for input parameters during the [Define Parameters](#) phase of the installation.

You can install your SAP system either in [Typical](#) or [Custom](#) mode:

- [Typical](#)  
If you choose [Typical](#), the installation is performed with default settings. This means that the software provisioning manager prompts you only for a small selection of installation parameters. These parameters include at least the following:
  - SAP system ID and database connectivity parameters
  - Master password
  - SAP system profile directory – only for systems with instances on separate hosts
  - Individual encryption key for the secure storage

For more information about the installation parameters, see the corresponding tables below in this document. If you want to change any of the default settings, you can do so on the [Parameter Summary](#) screen.

- [Custom](#)

If you choose [Custom](#), you are prompted for all parameters. At the end, you can still change any of these parameters on the [Parameter Summary](#) screen.


### i Note

You cannot change from [Custom](#) to [Typical](#) mode or from [Typical](#) to [Custom](#) mode on the [Parameter Summary](#) screen.

### i Note

- If you want to [ASCS Instance with Embedded SAP Web Dispatcher \[page 35\]](#), you must choose [Custom](#). Otherwise, you are not prompted for the [SAP Web Dispatcher installation parameters \[page 59\]](#) during the [Define Parameters](#) phase of the ASCS instance installation.
- If you want to [ASCS Instance with Embedded Gateway \[page 37\]](#), you must choose [Custom](#). Otherwise, you are not prompted for the SAP Gateway installation during the [Define Parameters](#) phase of the ASCS instance installation.

- [Only valid for 'High Availability': HA \(Windows\)](#)

**High Availability only:** If you decide to install an SAP Web Dispatcher or a Gateway in the ASCS instance, note that a failure of the SAP Web Dispatcher or the Gateway causes failover of the ASCS instance to another cluster node. The failover cluster monitors all processes that are started by the SAP start service (sapstartsrv.exe). For an ASCS instance this is: msg\_server.exe (message server), enservr.exe (enqueue server), gwrld.exe (Gateway), and sapwebdisp.exe (SAP Web Dispatcher). To prevent failover, see SAP Note [2375999](#) .

[End of 'High Availability': HA \(Windows\)](#)

The tables in the sections below list the basic SAP system installation parameters that you need to specify before installing your SAP system. For all other installation parameters, use the tool help on the software provisioning manager screens.

## Related Information

[SAP System Parameters \[page 48\]](#)

[SAP System Database Parameters \[page 57\]](#)

[Parameters for Additional Components to be Included in the ASCS Instance \[page 59\]](#)

## 5.2.7.1 SAP System Parameters

The tables in this section lists the basic SAP system installation parameters that you need to specify before installing your SAP system. For all other installation parameters, use the tool help on the software provisioning manager screens.

### General Parameters



Parameter	Description
SAP System ID <SAPSID>	<p>The SAP system ID (&lt;SAPSID&gt;) identifies the entire SAP system.</p> <p>The software provisioning manager prompts you for the &lt;SAPSID&gt; when you execute the <b>first</b> installation option to install a new SAP system.</p> <p>If there are further installation options to be executed, the software provisioning manager prompts you for the <code>profile</code> directory. For more information, see the description of the parameter <i>SAP System Profile Directory</i>.</p> <div><p><b>❖ Example</b></p><p>This prompt appears when you install the ASCS instance, which is the first instance to be installed in a distributed system.</p></div> <div><p><b>⚠ Caution</b></p><p>Choose your SAP system ID carefully since renaming requires considerable effort.</p></div> <p>Make sure that your SAP system ID:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Is unique throughout your organization. Do not use an existing &lt;SAPSID&gt; when installing a new SAP system.</li><li>• Consists of exactly three alphanumeric characters</li><li>• Contains only uppercase letters</li><li>• Has a letter for the first character</li><li>• Does not include any of the reserved IDs listed in SAP Note <a href="#">1979280</a>.</li><li>• If you want to install an additional application server instance, make sure that no Gateway instance with the same SAP System ID (SAPSID) exists in your SAP system landscape.</li></ul>



Parameter	Description
SAP System Instance Numbers	<p>Technical identifier for internal processes. It consists of a two-digit number from 00 to 97.</p> <p>The instance number must be unique on a host. That is, if more than one SAP instance is running on the same host, these instances must be assigned different numbers.</p> <p>If you do not enter a specific value, the instance number is set automatically to the next free and valid instance number that has not yet been assigned to the SAP system to be installed or to SAP systems that already exist on the installation host.</p> <div>Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)</div> <div> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>If you install the central instance and the dialog instances on the cluster nodes of a Microsoft failover cluster, SAPinst by default assigns the same instance number.</p> <p>If you install the central instance and the dialog instances on hosts that are not part of a Microsoft failover cluster, we recommend that you use the same instance number for them. If the instance number is already used on other hosts, you have to assign a different instance number for the central instance and the dialog instances.</p> </div> <div>End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)</div> <p>To find out the instance numbers of SAP systems that already exist on the installation host, look for subdirectories ending with <code>&lt;Instance Number&gt;</code> of local <code>\usr\sap\&lt;SAPSID&gt;</code> directories.</p> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">SAP Directories [page 158]</a>.</p> <div> <p><b>Caution</b></p> <p>Do <b>not</b> use 43, and 89 for the instance number because:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 43 is part of the port number for high availability</li> <li>• 89 is part of the port number for Windows Terminal Server</li> </ul> </div>

Parameter	Description
Virtual Host Name	<p>Virtual host name (network name) of the SAP&lt;SAPSID&gt; cluster group containing the ASCS instance.</p> <p>Virtual host name (network name) of the SAP&lt;SAPSID&gt; ERS cluster group containing the ASCS instance (only applies if Enqueue Replicator 2 is used).</p> <p>You can assign a virtual host name for the instance to be installed, by specifying it in the &lt;Instance_Name&gt; <i>Host Name</i> field of the &lt;Instance Name&gt; <i>Instance</i> screen. Then this instance is installed with this virtual host name.</p> <p>After the installation has completed, all application servers can use this virtual host name to connect to the instance. If you do not provide the virtual host name, the instance is installed automatically using the physical host name (= Windows host name) of the host where you run the software provisioning manager.</p> <p>You must have already reserved the virtual host name (network name) and its IP address on a DNS server before you run the software provisioning manager. For more information, see <a href="#">Using Virtual Host Names [page 72]</a>.</p> <div> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>Fully qualified host names, IPv4, IPv6 are not accepted as virtual host names.</p> </div>
SAP System Profile Directory	<p>\\&lt;SAPGLOBALHOST&gt;\sapmnt\&lt;SAPSID&gt;\SYS\profile</p> <p>The software provisioning manager retrieves parameters from the SAP system profile directory of an existing SAP system.</p> <p>SAP profiles are operating system files that contain instance configuration information.</p> <p>The software provisioning manager prompts you to enter the location of the <code>profile</code> directory when the installation option that you execute is not the first one belonging to your SAP system installation, for example if you are installing a distributed system or an additional application server instance to an existing SAP system. See also the description of the parameters <i>SAP System ID</i> and <i>Database ID</i>.</p>
Destination drive	<p>Base directory for the SAP system.</p> <div> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>If you install a subsequent SAP system, the <code>saploc</code> share already exists and you cannot select the installation drive. The software provisioning manager uses the installation drive where the <code>saploc</code> share points to.</p> </div>


Parameter	Description
Master Password	<p>Common password for all users that are created during the installation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Operating system users (for example <code>&lt;sapsid&gt;adm</code>, <code>SAPService&lt;sapsid&gt;</code>)</li> </ul> <div> <p><b>⚠ Caution</b></p> <p>If you did not create the operating system users manually before the installation, the software provisioning manager creates them with the common master password (see <i>Operating System Users</i>). In this case, make sure that the master password meets the requirements of your operating system.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ABAP users: <code>SAP*</code>, <code>DDIC</code>, and <code>EARLYWATCH</code>.</li> <li>Secure Store key phrase For more information, see line <i>Key Phrase for Secure Store Settings</i> and line <i>Individual Encryption Key for the Secure Storage</i> in this table.</li> </ul> <div> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>If a user already exists, you are prompted to confirm the password for this user.</p> </div> <p><b>Basic Password policy</b></p> <p>The master password must meet the following requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It can be 10 to 30 characters long</li> <li>It must contain at least one letter (a-z, A-Z)</li> <li>It must contain at least one digit (0-9)</li> <li>It must not contain <code>\</code> (backslash) or <code>"</code> (double quote).</li> </ul> <p><b>Additional restrictions depending on Windows:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If a user already exists, you are prompted to confirm the password for this user.</li> <li>Depending on the configuration of the password policy, additional restrictions might apply.</li> </ul> <p><b>Additional restrictions depending on SAP HANA database:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It must consist of at least one number, one lowercase letter, and one uppercase letter.</li> <li>It can only contain the following characters: <code>_</code>, <code>a-z</code>, <code>A-Z</code>, <code>0-9</code>, <code>#</code>, <code>@</code>, <code>\$</code>, <code>!</code> and must not start with a number or an underscore (<code>_</code>).</li> </ul> <p>Depending on the installation option, additional restrictions may apply.</p> <div> <p><b>→ Recommendation</b></p> <p>The Master Password feature can be used as a simple method to obtain customer-specific passwords for all newly created users. A basic security rule is not to have identical passwords for different users. Following this rule, we strongly recommend individualizing the values of these passwords after the installation is complete.</p> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">Ensuring User Security [page 139]</a>.</p> </div>

Parameter	Description
Message Server Access Control List	<p>You can specify if you want to have a message server Access Control List (ACL) created.</p> <p>The ACL is created as a file in the / &lt;sapmnt&gt; / &lt;SAPSID&gt; / global directory. If it exists, it defines the hosts from which the message server accepts requests.</p> <div>  <b>Caution</b> <p>Only trigger the creation of this file if you do not plan to install any additional instances for this system. With the creation of this ACL, you overwrite existing settings and prevent instances from being installed on additional hosts. If you decide to install an additional instance later, you need to remove this file manually before the installation and create it again after the installation of the additional instance.</p> </div> <p>For more information, see the information about ms/acl_info in SAP Notes <a href="#">1495075</a> and <a href="#">826779</a>.</p>
Individual Encryption Key for the Secure Storage	<p>You can set a randomly generated individual encryption key for the secure storage in the file system and the secure storage in the database. If you skip this step, the system is installed with a default key which provides obfuscation only, but it can be changed later.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For more information on the secure storage in the file system, see the <a href="#">SAP Online Documentation [page 18]</a> at:           <p>► <a href="#">Security</a> ► <a href="#">System Security</a> ► <a href="#">System Security for SAP NetWeaver AS ABAP Only</a> ► <a href="#">Secure Storage in the File System (AS ABAP)</a> ►</p> </li> <li>For more information on the secure storage in the database, see the <a href="#">SAP Online Documentation [page 18]</a> at:           <p>► <a href="#">Security</a> ► <a href="#">System Security</a> ► <a href="#">System Security for SAP NetWeaver AS ABAP Only</a> ► <a href="#">Secure Storage (ABAP)</a> ► <a href="#">Key Management</a> ► <a href="#">Using Individual Encryption Keys</a> ► <a href="#">Generating Encryption Keys</a> ►</p> </li> </ul>
DNS Domain Name for SAP System	<p>If you want to use HTTP-based URL frameworks such as Web Dynpro applications, you have to specify the DNS domain name for the SAP system.</p> <p>The DNS Domain Name is used to calculate the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN), which is configured in profile parameter SAPLOCALHOSTFULL. FQDN is the fully qualified domain name for an IP address. It consists of the host name and the domain name:</p> <p>&lt;Host_Name&gt; . &lt;Domain_Name&gt;</p> <p>The DNS Domain Name is needed to define the URLs for the ABAP application servers. It is appended to the server name to calculate the FQDN.</p> <div>  <b>Example</b> <p>If your application server host is called kirk.wdf.sap.com, the DNS Domain Name is wdf.sap.com.</p> </div>

Parameter	Description
SAP Host Agent Upgrade (Optional)	<p>If there already exists an SAP Host Agent on the installation host, the software provisioning manager asks you if you want to upgrade it to a newer patch level version. If you want the existing version to be upgraded, you must provide the new target version of the SAPHOSTAGENT&lt;Version&gt; .SAR archive.</p> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">Downloading the SAP Kernel Archives [page 80]</a></p>

## Ports

Parameter	Description
ABAP Message Server Port	<div> <div>⚠ Caution</div> <p>The message server port number must be unique on the host where the message server for the SAP system is running. If there are several message servers running on one host, the message server ports must all be unique.</p> </div> <p>If you do not specify a value, the default port number is used.</p> <p><b>ABAP Message Server Port</b></p> <p>There is an external message server port and an internal message server port.</p> <p>The ABAP message server uses both the internal and the external message server ports. The default profile contains the configuration for both message server ports.</p> <p>The <b>external</b> message server port uses the parameter <code>rdisp/msserv</code> with default value <code>36&lt;ABAP_Message_Server_Instance_Number&gt;</code>.</p> <p>The <b>internal</b> message server port uses the parameter <code>rdisp/msserv_internal</code> with default value <code>39&lt;ABAP_Message_Server_Instance_Number&gt;</code>.</p> <p>During the installation of an SAP system from scratch or an additional application server instance to an existing SAP system, the message server is configured to only accept secure connections. The DEFAULT.PFL profile parameter <code>system/secure_communication</code> is set to ON (<b>system/secure_communication = ON</b>) if the kernel supports secure connections to the message server. For more information, see SAP Note <a href="#">2040644</a>.</p>

Parameter	Definition
Password of Operating System Users	<p>The passwords of the operating system users <b>must</b> comply with the Windows password policy. The software provisioning manager processes the passwords of operating system users as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the operating system users do <b>not</b> exist, SAP creates the following users: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>&lt;sapsid&gt;adm</code> This user is the SAP system administrator user. It is a member of the local <code>Administrators</code> group.</li> <li><code>SAPService&lt;SAPSID&gt;</code> This user is the Windows account to run the SAP system. It is not a member of the local <code>Administrators</code> group.</li> <li><code>sapadm</code> The SAP Host Agent user <code>sapadm</code> is used for central monitoring services. The software provisioning manager creates this user by default as a local user although it is not a member of the local <code>Administrators</code> group. If required, you can change this user to become a domain user on the <a href="#">Parameter Summary</a> screen. For more information, see <a href="#">Performing a Domain Installation Without Being a Domain Administrator [page 162]</a>. For security reasons, however, SAP strongly recommends you to create this user as a local user.</li> </ul> <p>The software provisioning manager sets the master password for these users by default. You can overwrite and change the passwords either by using the parameter mode <a href="#">Custom</a> or by changing them on the <a href="#">Parameter Summary</a> screen.</p> </li> <li>If the operating system users already exist, the software provisioning manager prompts you for the existing password, except the password of these users is the same as the master password.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid orange; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>⚠ Caution</b></p> <p>Make sure that you have the <a href="#">required user authorization [page 70]</a> for these accounts before you start the installation.</p> </div>
Windows Domain Organizational Units	<p>You can choose the organizational units (OUs) within the Windows domain where you want to create the SAP system accounts.</p> <p>By default, the software provisioning manager creates the domain users <code>SAPService&lt;SAPSID&gt;</code>, <code>&lt;SAPSID&gt;adm</code>, and the domain group <code>SAP_&lt;SAPSID&gt;_Globaladmin</code> in the domain Users container. Here you can specify an optional organizational unit where the software provisioning manager creates these domain users and group. The user who performs the installation needs read and write permissions to this organizational unit.</p> <p>The OU feature is only available when you select <a href="#">Custom mode</a> in SWPM and choose <a href="#">Use Domain of current user</a>. For more information, see SAP Note <a href="#">2247673</a> .</p>

Parameter	Definition
Java Administrator User  <div> <b>i Note</b>            This user is only created during the installation of the application server ABAP for an SAP NetWeaver 7.5 Process Integration (PI) system or for an SAP Solution Manager 7.2 system.         </div>	<p>The software provisioning manager creates this user in the ABAP system.</p> <p>After the installation, this user is available both in the ABAP and in the Java system.</p> <p>The software provisioning manager sets the user name <code>J2EE_ADMIN</code> and the master password by default.</p> <p>If required, you can choose another user name and password according to your requirements.</p>
Java Guest User  <div> <b>i Note</b>            This user is only created during the installation of the application server ABAP for an SAP NetWeaver 7.5 Process Integration (PI) system or for an SAP Solution Manager 7.2 system.         </div>	<p>This user is for employees who do not belong to a company or who have registered as company users and who are waiting for approval. Guest users belong to the default group <code>Authenticated Users</code>.</p> <p>The software provisioning manager creates this user in the ABAP system.</p> <p>After the installation, it is available both in the ABAP and in the Java system.</p> <p>The software provisioning manager sets the user name <code>J2EE_GUEST</code> and the master password by default.</p> <p>If required, you can choose another user name and password according to your requirements.</p> <p>For more information about supported UME data sources and change options, see SAP Note <a href="#">718383</a>.</p>
Communication User  <div> <b>i Note</b>            This user is only created during the installation of the application server ABAP for an SAP NetWeaver 7.5 Process Integration (PI) system or for an SAP Solution Manager 7.2 system.         </div>	<p>The software provisioning manager creates this user in the ABAP system.</p> <p>After the installation, it is available both in the ABAP and in the Java system</p> <p>This user is used for the communication between the ABAP system and the Java system.</p> <p>The software provisioning manager sets the user name <code>SAPJSF</code> and the master password by default.</p> <p>If required, you can choose another user name and password according to your requirements.</p> <p>For more information about supported UME data sources and change options, see SAP Note <a href="#">718383</a>.</p>

## System Landscape Directory

Parameter	Definition
SLD Destination for the System	<p>The System Landscape Directory (SLD) registers the systems and the installed software of your entire system landscape.</p> <p>You can choose between the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Register in existing SLD</i> Choose this option to register the SAP system you are installing in an existing SAP System Landscape Directory (SLD) by specifying the SLD connection parameters listed below in this table.</li> <li>• <i>No SLD destination</i> Choose this option if you do <b>not</b> want to register the SAP system you are installing in an existing SAP System Landscape Directory (SLD). You then have to configure the SLD destination manually after the installation has finished.</li> </ul>
SLD Host	The host name of the existing SLD.
SLD HTTP(S) Port	<p>HTTP port of the SAP system based on AS Java on which the System Landscape Directory (SLD) resides. The following naming convention applies: 5&lt;Primary_Application_Server_Instance_Number&gt;00.</p> <div> <p>❁ Example</p> <p>If the primary application server instance number of the AS Java on which the System Landscape Directory (SLD) resides is 01, the SLD HTTP Port is 50100.</p> </div>
SLD Data Supplier User and password	The existing SLD Data Supplier user and password of the existing SLD



## 5.2.7.2 SAP System Database Parameters

Parameters	Description
SYSTEM_ID	<p>The SYSTEM_ID identifies the tenant database instance.</p> <p>This is the result of the following query:</p> <pre>select SYSTEM_ID from M_DATABASE</pre> <p>If your SAP HANA SYSTEM_ID is the same as the chosen SAP System ID <code>&lt;SAPSID&gt;</code>, there are following restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The ABAP system and SAP HANA database have to be installed on different hosts</li><li>• Database installation has to done on the ABAP host. Otherwise Database installation procedure with Software Provisioning Manager (the "software provisioning manager") could overwrite the environment files (<code>sapenv.*</code>) of the SAP HANA database and the database will not start any more after reboot.</li></ul>
DATABASE_NAME, Database ID, <code>&lt;DBSID&gt;</code>	<p>The <code>&lt;DBSID&gt;</code> identifies the tenant database. This is the result of the following query:</p> <pre>select DATABASE_NAME from M_DATABASE</pre>
Database schema	<p>The ABAP database schema is named <code>SAPHANADB</code>. This name cannot be changed.</p> <p>The schema name must be present in the database backup to be restored. You must specify the same password as in the backup. The password is not changed by the software provisioning manager.</p>

Parameters	Description
Virtual Host Name	<p>Virtual host name (network name) of the SAP&lt;SAPSID&gt; cluster group</p> <p>You can assign virtual host names to the SAP HANA database instance by starting the software provisioning manager with the <b>SAPINST_USE_HOSTNAME</b> property. For more information, see <a href="#">Running Software Provisioning Manager [page 95]</a>.</p> <p>After the installation has completed, all application servers can use this virtual host name to connect to the SAP HANA database instance. The virtual host name is also a global host name. If you do not provide the virtual host name, the instance is installed automatically using the physical host name of the host where you run the software provisioning manager.</p> <p>You must have already reserved the virtual host name (network name) and its IP address on a DNS server before you run the software provisioning manager. For more information, see <a href="#">Using Virtual Host Names [page 72]</a>.</p> <div> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>Fully qualified host names, IPv4, IPv6 are not accepted as virtual host names.</p> </div>
Configuration of SAP liveCache withSAP HANA	<p>Select <i>Install SAP liveCache for SAP System</i> if you want to configure SAP liveCache for your SAP System. You need the SAP liveCache installation only when at least one of your applications uses it.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select <i>Use SAP liveCache integrated in SAP HANA</i> if you want your SAP liveCache in the SAP HANA database instance. To configure it, SAP liveCache integrated in SAP HANA (also called LCAPPS- or liveCache Applications plugin) must be pre-installed in an existing HANA database. For more information about how to install LCAPPS, see SAP Note <a href="#">2979266</a>. For more information about SAP liveCache on SAP HANA requirements, see the <i>SAP HANA Master Guide</i> at: <a href="http://help.sap.com/hana_platform">http://help.sap.com/hana_platform</a> ► <i>Implement</i> ► <i>Installation and Upgrade</i> ►</li> <li>Select <i>Use external SAP liveCache based on SAP MaxDB technology</i> if you want to run SAP liveCache as a separate SAP MaxDB database instance. This is not supported with S/4 HANA installations. For more information about SAP MaxDB liveCache Technology requirements, see the <i>SAP MaxDB liveCache Technology</i> installation guide at: <a href="https://help.sap.com/viewer/swpm10guides">https://help.sap.com/viewer/swpm10guides</a> ► <i>Installation Option of Software Provisioning Manager 1.0</i> ► <i>Installation Guides</i> ► <i>Standalone Engines and Clients</i> ► <i>Software Provisioning Manager 1.0</i> ► <i>SAP MaxDB liveCache Technology</i> ►</li> </ul>

Parameters	Description
Database Backup Location	<p>The location of the database backup from the source system</p> <p>This directory is searched for the SAP HANA database backup files created from the source system.</p> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">Creating and Transferring the SAP HANA Database Backup [page 88]</a>.</p>
Database Backup Name	<p>The name of the SAP HANA database backup from the source system</p> <p>If you are using SAP HANA multitenant database container, specify the backup of the database tenant. The Backup Name must correspond to a set of backup files located in the Backup Location.</p> <div> <p>❖ Example</p> <p>For example, a data backup consists of the following files:</p> <pre>SCO_INITIAL_databackup_0_1 SCO_INITIAL_databackup_3_1</pre> <p>In this example, the value of the input field Backup Name is SCO_INITIAL.</p> </div> <p>This name is required to identify the backup to be recovered if there is more than one backup.</p> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">Creating and Transferring the SAP HANA Database Backup [page 88]</a>.</p>
Database Monitor User	<p>The database monitor user is named DBACOCKPIT. This name cannot be changed.</p> <p>DBACOCKPIT is a dedicated database user to monitor and administer the local database</p> <p>For more information, see <a href="https://help.sap.com/docs/SAP_S4HANA_ON-PREMISE">https://help.sap.com/docs/SAP_S4HANA_ON-PREMISE</a> » &lt;Release&gt; » Search for "DBA Cockpit for SAP HANA" » DBA Cockpit for SAP HANA: Authorizations »</p>

### 5.2.7.3 Parameters for Additional Components to be Included in the ASCS Instance

You only need to specify the following parameters during the ASCS instance installation if you perform an embedded installation of additional components.

#### i Note

You must choose *Custom* parameter mode. Otherwise you are not prompted for the parameters related to these additional components during the *Define Parameters* phase.

Parameters	Description
Install a gateway embedded in the ASCS instance	When processing the screens for the ASCS instance installation, you are prompted to mark this checkbox on the screen <a href="#">Additional Components to be Included in the ASCS Instance</a> .
Install an SAP Web Dispatcher embedded in the ASCS instance	<p>When processing the screens for the ASCS instance installation, you are prompted to mark this checkbox on the screen <a href="#">Additional Components to be Included in the ASCS Instance</a>.</p> <p>If you mark the checkbox for SAP Web Dispatcher, you are prompted for the additional parameters required for the SAP Web Dispatcher installation on the subsequent screens:</p>
	<p>Message Server Host</p> <p>The name of the host on which the message server is located (profile parameter <code>rdisp/mshost</code>)</p>
	<p>Message Server HTTP Port</p> <p>HTTP port of the message server (profile parameter <code>ms/server_port_&lt;xx&gt;</code>)</p>
	<p>Password for the Internet Communication Management (ICM) user</p> <p>In order to use the web administration interface for the Internet Communication Manager (ICM) and SAP Web Dispatcher, an administration user <code>webadm</code> is created by the software provisioning manager.</p> <p>You have to assign a password for this user.</p>

## Related Information

[ASCS Instance with Embedded SAP Web Dispatcher \[page 35\]](#)

[ASCS Instance with Embedded Gateway \[page 37\]](#)

## 5.2.8 SAP System Transport Host

The transport host contains the transport directory used by the SAP transport system to store transport data and change SAP system information, such as software programs, write dictionary data, or customizing data. If you have several SAP systems it depends on your security requirements whether you want them to share a transport directory or whether you use separate directories.

When you install an SAP system, you have to decide which transport host and directory you want to use for your SAP system:

- Use the transport directory that the software provisioning manager creates during the installation of the SAP system by default on the global host.  
The software provisioning manager by default creates the transport directory on the global host in `\usr\sap\trans`.

- Use a transport directory located on a host other than the default host:
  - You can use an **existing** transport directory and host in your SAP system landscape.
  - You can set up a **new** transport directory on a different host.

In either case, you must [prepare this host for use by the new SAP system \[page 73\]](#).

## More Information

- [SAP Directories \[page 158\]](#)
- See the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:

Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA ("ABAP Platform 1809" for short) <b>and higher</b>	► <a href="#">Adminstrating the ABAP Platform</a> ► <a href="#">Administration Concepts and Tools</a> ► <a href="#">Solution Life Cycle Management</a> ► <a href="#">Software Logistics</a> ► <a href="#">Change and Transport System</a> ► <a href="#">Change and Transport System – Overview</a> ► <a href="#">Basics of the Change and Transport System</a> ► <a href="#">Transport Management System – Concept</a> ►
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0	► <a href="#">Adminstrating the ABAP Platform</a> ► <a href="#">Administration Concepts and Tools</a> ► <a href="#">Solution Life Cycle Management</a> ► <a href="#">Software Logistics</a> ► <a href="#">Change and Transport System</a> ► <a href="#">Change and Transport System – Overview</a> ► <a href="#">Basics of the Change and Transport System</a> ► <a href="#">Transport Management System – Concept</a> ►
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 ( <a href="#">&lt;SP08</a> or <a href="#">higher</a> )	► <a href="#">Solution Life Cycle Management</a> ► <a href="#">Software Logistics</a> ► <a href="#">Change and Transport System</a> ► <a href="#">Change and Transport System – Overview</a> ► <a href="#">Basics of the Change and Transport System</a> ► <a href="#">Transport Management System – Concept</a> ►

# 6 Preparation

This preparation checklist guides you through the required preparation steps:

1. You [prepare the system copy \[page 63\]](#).
2. You [prepare the installation of the target system \[page 65\]](#).

## Next Steps

[System Copy Procedure \[page 88\]](#)

# 7 General Technical Preparations for the System Copy

To make a consistent system copy using a database backup of the source system's SAP HANA database , you need to prepare the source system and perform some subsequent actions on the target system. This is not necessary when performing a test run.

## Context

The following section describes important preparations on the source system before you perform a system copy using a database backup of the source system's database .

- SAP systems based on SAP S/4HANA 1809 or higher:  
For more information about SAP System Administration, see the *Administering the ABAP Platform* section in the [Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) .
- SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA<1.0 SR1 or higher>:  
For more information about SAP System Administration, see the *Administration* section in the [Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) .

## Procedure

1. Before you start a system copy using a database backup of the source system's database , check the minimum kernel patch level required by the support package level of the source system.

It might be necessary to replace the SAP kernel delivered with the installation kit and installed during the installation of the target system by a newer kernel patch level before starting the target system. If you have to replace the delivered SAP kernel, you can do this after the installation of the primary application server instance.

2. Check if canceled or pending update requests exist in the system. If canceled or pending updates exist, you must update these again or delete them from all clients. Proceed as follows:
  - a. Call transaction **SM13**.
  - b. Delete the default values for the client, user, and time.
  - c. Choose all update requests.
  - d. Check if table **VBDATA** contains any entries. If there are entries, update or delete the corresponding update requests.
  - e. To check whether this action was successful, call transaction **SE16** for table **VBDATA**.
3. Stop scheduling of all released jobs.

Go to transaction **SE38** and run report **BTCTRS1**. For more information, see SAP Note [37425](#) .

4. Adapt the operation mode timetable to make sure that no switching of operating modes takes place while a system is being (transaction **SM63**).

5. Write down the logical system names of all clients:

- If you plan to overwrite an existing system with a system copy, make sure you write down the logical system names of all clients in the system that will be overwritten (transaction **SCC4**).  
Since the logical system names will be overwritten, in the event of differences, you must change them back to their original names (as they existed in the system that is overwritten) in the follow-up actions after the .

6. Make yourself familiar with the requirements for the backup of your source system's SAP HANA database.

For more information, see the *SAP HANA Database Backup and Recovery* section in the *SAP HANA Administration Guide for SAP HANA Platform* at [http://help.sap.com/hana\\_platform](http://help.sap.com/hana_platform) ►► *Operate*  
► *Administration* ►



# 8 Preparing the Target System Installation

This preparation checklist guides you through the preparation steps required for the target system installation.

[Preparation Checklist \[page 65\]](#)

## 8.1 Preparation Checklist

This section includes the preparation steps that you have to perform for the following installation options:

- Standard, distributed, or high-availability system
- Additional application server instance

Detailed information about the steps are available in the linked sections.

### Standard, Distributed, or High-Availability System

#### i Note

In a [standard system \[page 30\]](#), all mandatory instances except the database instance are normally installed on one host. Therefore, if you are installing a standard system, you can ignore references to other hosts.

The SAP HANA database is normally pre-installed by SAP partners before you start the installation. For more information about how to install the SAP HANA database, see the [SAP HANA Server Installation and Update Guide](#) at [https://help.sap.com/hana\\_platform](https://help.sap.com/hana_platform) ► ► [Implement](#) ► [Installation and Upgrade](#) ►. The database instance is remotely installed by SoftwareProvisioning Manager (the “software provisioning manager”) from the primary application server host.

1. You make sure that the [SAP HANA target database is installed on the SAP HANA target host \[page 66\]](#).
2. You decide how to [set connectivity data for your SAP HANA database \[page 67\]](#).
3. [Disable the Windows Server \[page 67\]](#) firewall operating system users and groups on each host.
4. You [perform basic preparations on Windows \[page 68\]](#).
5. You [check that you have the required user authorization for running the software provisioning manager \[page 70\]](#).
6. If required, you [prepare the SAP system transport host \[page 73\]](#) for your SAP system.
7. You [install the SAP front-end software \[page 74\]](#) on the desktop of the user.
8. If required, you [configure host names for the SAP HANA database \[page 74\]](#).
9. To establish a secure connection to your SAP HANA, follow the instructions in [Establishing Secure Connection to the SAP HANA Database \[page 75\]](#).
10. You check that the required [installation software \[page 77\]](#) is available for each installation host.

11. 

Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

To install a high-availability system with Microsoft Failover Clustering, you also perform the [HA-specific preparation steps \[page 181\]](#).

End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)
12. You continue with [Installation \[page 90\]](#).

## Additional Application Server Instance

You have to perform the following preparations on the host where you install the additional application server instances:

1. [Disable the Windows Server firewall \[page 67\]](#) operating system users and groups on each host.
2. You [perform basic preparations on Windows \[page 68\]](#).
3. You [check that you have the required user authorization for running the software provisioning manager \[page 70\]](#).
4. If required, you [prepare the SAP system transport host \[page 73\]](#).
5. You [install the SAP front-end software \[page 74\]](#) on the desktop of the user.
6. You [check the time zones of the ABAP application server and the SAP HANA system \[page 77\]](#).
7. You check that the required [installation software \[page 77\]](#) is available on each installation host.
8. You continue with [Installation \[page 90\]](#).

## 8.2 Installing the SAP HANA Target Database

Make sure that the SAP HANA target database has been installed before you start the target SAP system installation.

For more information about how to install the SAP HANA database, see the [SAP HANA Server Installation and Update Guide](#) at [https://help.sap.com/hana\\_platform](https://help.sap.com/hana_platform) ►► [Implement](#) ► [Installation and Upgrade](#) ►.

The version of the SAP HANA target database must be the same as or higher than the version of the source database.

For more information about how to check the version, see the *SAP HANA Administration Guide* at [https://help.sap.com/hana\\_platform](https://help.sap.com/hana_platform) ►► [System Administration](#) ►.

The SAP HANA database is normally part of the SAP HANA appliance. It is normally pre-installed by SAP partners before you start the installation using the software provisioning manager. The software provisioning manager accesses the SAP HANA database remotely to perform the necessary database-specific installation steps.

## 8.3 Setting Connectivity Data for the SAP HANA Database

An SAP ABAP system needs connectivity data to log on to the SAP HANA database. This section describes methods for setting up connectivity data.

For SAP HANA database, you can set up the connectivity data using the following methods:

- Local hdbuserstore container (default method)  
The local hdbuserstore container has always been available with SAP HANA. It is used in all versions of software provisioning manager. It is the default when you are doing an installation of SAP HANA or a migration to SAP HANA. One hdbuserstore is created for each host for which you installing an ABAP instance.  
The hdbuserstore is stored in the Windows registry. The hdbuserstore is used by the SAP kernel tools without further options and by SAP HANA client tools such as hdbsql using the option `-u <ENTRY>`. You can trace the connect method of R3trans by checking the log file `trans.log`.  
The disadvantage of this method is that there is one hdbuserstore container on each SAP application server. This means that, if you want to change the connectivity data, you have to log on to each server of the system and change the data separately on each server.  
To use this method, you need take no further action since it is the default.
- If you want to use virtual host names, you must start the software provisioning manager with the `SAPINST_USE_HOSTNAME` parameter.  
For more information, see [Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 95\]](#).
- ABAP secure storage in the file system (SSFS)  
ABAP SSFS is a database-independent method of storing data located inside the SAP system. For more information, see SAP Note [1639578](#).  
To use this method, you start the installation with the parameter `HDB_ABAP_SSFS=YES`. For more information, see [Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 95\]](#).  
Note that only SAP kernel tools can read from ABAP SSFS. This means that SAP HANA client tools such as hdbsql cannot use ABAP SSFS. Therefore, you might want to choose one application server where you still maintain one hdbuserstore container.

## 8.4 Disabling the Windows Server Firewall on Windows Server

The Windows firewall – which is turned on by default on all Windows versions – is configured to allow only a small set of Windows-specific inbound IP connections. By default, outbound connections are not limited to rules and are therefore not restricted by the firewall.

The firewall settings apply to local policies. For domain policies that override local policies, other rules might apply.

To avoid any problems with non-configured TCP/IP ports that are used by the SAP system, you need to disable the firewall on all Windows hosts before you install the SAP system with the software provisioning manager. We recommend that you secure network access to the SAP application servers with a real physical firewall or use a router Access Control List (ACL).

## Procedure

Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

### i Note

In a high-availability system, you have to disable the firewall on **all** failover cluster nodes.

End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

Open PowerShell in elevated mode, and enter the following command:

```
Set-NetFirewallProfile -enabled false
```

## 8.5 Performing Basic Windows Preparation Steps

### Use

This section informs you about basic preparation steps that you have to perform before you install the SAP system, including the following:

- Deactivate the file and directory attribute caches
- Checking the Windows file system
- Checking the Windows domain structure (domain installation only)
- Deciding whether you want to use organizational units (OUs) in the Windows domain (domain installation only)

## Procedure

### Deactivate the File and Directory Attribute Caches

You need to set the following three file and directory attribute caches to 0:

For more information, see [3358301](#) .

Perform as follows:

1. Open PowerShell
2. Enter the following three commands:
  - Set-SmbClientConfiguration -FileInfoCacheLifetime 0
  - Set-SmbClientConfiguration -FileNotFoundCacheLifetime 0
  - Set-SmbClientConfiguration -DirectoryCacheLifetime 0

### Checking the Windows File System

You need to check which Windows file system you are using on hosts where you want to install the SAP system.

You should use the Windows file system ReFs or NTFS. Older Windows Server versions must use NTFS.

### **i Note**

Do **not** install the SAP system on a FAT partition.

Perform the check as follows:

- Use PowerShell:
  1. Open PowerShell in elevated mode, and enter the following command:  
`get-volume`
  2. Check that the value *FileSystem* is ReFs or NTFS.
- Use Windows Explorer:
  1. Open the Windows Explorer.
  2. Select the relevant disk.
  3. Choose ► *Properties* ► *General* ► .  
The system displays the type of file system in use.
  4. Check that the file system is NTFS.

### **Checking the Windows Domain Structure**

### **i Note**

You do **not** need this step for a local installation.

For a domain installation, we recommend that you check that all SAP system hosts are members of a single Windows domain. We recommend this for all SAP system setups.

We assume that you are familiar with checking Windows domain structures. For more information, see the Windows documentation.

In Windows, you can implement either of the following domain models for the SAP system:

- Extra domain  
In this model, the SAP system is embedded in its own domain, which is specially defined for SAP. A second domain exists for the user accounts.  
In Windows, the SAP domain and user domain must be incorporated in a domain tree. In this tree, the user accounts must form the root domain and the SAP domain must be a child domain of this.
- Single domain  
In this model, the SAP system, and the user accounts are included in a single domain.

### **⚠ Caution**

You cannot create local users and groups on the host that is used as domain controller. Therefore, we do **not** support running an SAP instance (including the database instance) on the host where the domain controller is installed.

### **Deciding Whether to Use Organizational Units (OUs) in the Windows Domain**

### **i Note**

You do **not** need this step for a local installation.

For a domain installation, the software provisioning manager needs to create certain OS users for SAP and database operations in the Windows domain, also called the “Active Directory” (AD). These users are created by default in the AD container “Users”.

Depending on a customer’s AD landscape and security policy, there are certain restrictions on where to store users and groups in AD. Contact the administrator of your AD infrastructure to understand where to store all SAP and database-related domain users and domain groups.

The SAP software provisioning manager offers to define an existing OU in AD to create all needed SAP and database users in this OU.

There are many different scenarios and prerequisites concerning how to use OUs. For more information, see SAP Note [2247673](#), which explains these issues in detail and shows some examples of how to use them.

#### ⚠ Caution

The software provisioning manager does **not** create OUs. The software provisioning manager does **not** move existing domain users or groups. The software provisioning manager does **not** delete existing users, groups, OUs, nor any other object in a Windows domain.

The only exception to this rule is the Uninstall option in the software provisioning manager.

## 8.6 Required User Authorization for Running Software Provisioning Manager

Although the software provisioning manager automatically grants the rights required for the installation to the user account used for the installation, you have to check whether this account has the required authorization to perform the installation. The authorization required depends on whether you intend to perform a **domain** or **local** installation. If necessary, you have to ask the system administrator to grant the account the necessary authorization **before** you start the installation. If you attempt the installation with an account that does not have the required authorization, the installation aborts.

This section informs you about the authorization required for a domain and a local installation.

### Procedure

#### ⚠ Caution

Do **not** use the user <sapsid>adm or the built-in administrator account for the installation of the SAP system.

#### Domain Installation

For a domain installation the account used for the installation needs to be a member of the local Administrators group. In many old installation guides, you find the information that the account must be a member of the Domain Admins group. The account can be either a member of the Domain Admins group or belong to the Domain Users group and have the necessary rights to create/modify objects in the domain.

For a list of the required permissions, see [Performing a Domain Installation without being a Domain Administrator \[page 162\]](#).

All machines in the system must belong to the same domain. In a domain installation, the user information is stored centrally on the domain controller and is accessible to all hosts in the system.

If the SAP system is to be distributed across **more than one** machine, SAP strongly recommends that you perform a domain installation to avoid authorization problems.

#### ⚠ Caution

- If you install a distributed system as a local installation, this can lead to authorization problems for the operating system users <sapsid>adm and SAPService<SAPSID>. It can also lead to problems with the transport directory, which is usually shared by several SAP systems. SAP does **not** support distributed SAP systems running with local user accounts.
- Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

In a high-availability configuration, you always have to perform a **domain** installation.

End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)
- For performance and security reasons, SAP does not support an SAP system installation on a domain controller.

#### Local Installation

For a local installation the account used for the installation needs to be a member of the local `Administrators` group of the machine involved. In a local installation, all Windows account information is stored locally on one host and is not visible to any other hosts in the system.

#### ⚠ Caution

Do not use the Windows built-in account `Administrator` or the renamed built-in account to install your SAP system. The built-in account only has restricted network access rights that are required by the software provisioning manager. If you renamed the built-in account `Administrator`, do not create a new account named `Administrator`.

For a local installation, you need to:

1. Check that the account used for the installation is a member of the local `Administrators` group.
2. If required, obtain these rights by asking the system administrator to enter the account as a member of the local `Administrators` group.

## Related Information

[Performing a Domain Installation Without Being a Domain Administrator \[page 162\]](#)

## 8.7 Using Virtual Host Names

You can use one or more virtual TCP/IP host names for SAP servers within an SAP server landscape to hide their physical network identities from each other. This can be useful when quickly moving SAP servers or complete server landscapes to alternative hardware since you do not need to reinstall or reconfigure.

### Prerequisites

- Make sure that the virtual host name can be correctly resolved in your Domain Name System (DNS) setup.
- Make sure that you configured the Windows operating system properly to use virtual host names. For more information, see SAP Note [1564275](#).

### Context

Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

#### ⚠ Caution

##### High Availability only:

- Only use virtual host names if this is explicitly stated in the parts of this installation guide specific to high availability. Otherwise, use the physical host name.
- Do **not** start the software provisioning manager with the command line parameter `SAPINST_USE_HOSTNAME=<virtual hostname>` on failover cluster nodes.

End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

### Procedure

1. Assign the required virtual host names to the instance to be installed by specifying them in one of the following ways:
  - By starting the software provisioning manager with the `SAPINST_USE_HOSTNAME` property. For more information, see [Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 95\]](#).
  - Alternatively by specifying virtual host names in the `<Instance Name> Host Name` field of the `<Instance Name> Instance` screen.

For more information, see the *Virtual Host Name* parameter description in [SAP System Parameters \[page 48\]](#) and SAP Note [962955](#).

2. To install a **non-high-availability** system, proceed as described in SAP Note [1564275](#).



## 8.8 Preparing the SAP System Transport Host

The transport host has a directory structure that is used by the SAP transport system to store transport data and metadata.

### Context

When you install an SAP system, the software provisioning manager by default creates the transport directory on the global host in `\usr\sap\trans`.

If you do not intend to use the directory structure of the system you are going to install, but want to use another new transport directory on another host, or an existing transport directory in your system landscape, you need to prepare that transport host:

- If the directory structure already exists, you must set up its security to allow the new system to write to it.
- If it does not yet exist, you must create the core directory structure and a share to export it for other computers as well as set the security on it.

The transport directory `\usr\sap\trans` is used by the Change and Transport System (CTS). The CTS helps you to organize development projects in the ABAP Workbench and in Customizing, and then transport the changes between the SAP systems in your system landscape. For more information, see the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:

► [Solution Life Cycle Management](#) ► [Software Logistics](#) ► [Change and Transport System](#) ► [Change and Transport System – Overview](#) ► [Basics of the Change and Transport System](#) ► [Transport Management System – Concept](#) ►

### Procedure

1. If the transport directory does not yet exist, do the following:
  - a. Create the directory `\usr\sap\trans` on the host to be used as the transport host.
  - b. Share the `usr\sap` directory on the transport host as `SAPMNT` and set the permission for [Everyone](#) to [Full Control](#) for this share.  
  
This enables the software provisioning manager to address the transport directory in the standard way as `\\SAPTRANSHOST\SAPMNT\trans`.
2. Grant [Everyone](#) the permission [Full Control](#) for the transport directory.

#### ⚠ Caution

Remove the [Full Control to Everyone](#) permission after you have finished the installation and only grant [Full Control](#) on this directory to the `SAP_<SAPSID>_GlobalAdmin` groups of all the systems that are part of your transport infrastructure. The software provisioning manager assigns the appropriate rights with the help of an additional `SAP_LocalAdmin` group. For more information, see [Automatic Creation of Accounts and Groups \[page 173\]](#).

## 8.9 Installing the SAP Front-End Software

Before you start the installation, make sure that the SAP front-end software is installed on at least **one** computer in your system environment to be able to log on to the SAP system after the installation has finished.

### Procedure

1. Check SAP Note [147519](#) for the recommended SAP front-end release.
2. Install the SAP front-end software required for your SAP system release as described in the documentation *SAP Frontend Installation Guide* - <Release> at: <https://wiki.scn.sap.com/wiki/display/ATopics/SAP+GUI+Family>

## 8.10 Configuring Host Names for the SAP HANA Database

You need to perform this procedure if you want to use virtual host names or if your SAP HANA database is located in a separate network.

### Context

During the *Define Parameters* phase, the software provisioning manager prompts you for the parameters to connect to your SAP HANA database. However, the database host name that you enter is not used for the user store. Instead, the external host name of the database is determined and subsequently used. If the SAP HANA database was installed using a virtual host name and you want this host to be used in the user store connection environment, make sure the host can be resolved from the installation host as well.

### Procedure

Make sure that the external host name of the database is correctly maintained.

For more information on how to do this, see SAP Note [1930853](#) or section *Mapping Host Names for Database Client Access* in the *SAP HANA Administration Guide*, available here:

[https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP\\_HANA\\_PLATFORM](https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_HANA_PLATFORM) Administration

## 8.11 Establishing Secure Connection to the SAP HANA Database

You can establish a secure connection to the SAP HANA database.

You can accomplish this in one of the following ways:

- Use the software provisioning manager to configure the SAP system instances to use the Transport Layer Secure (TLS)/Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol to secure connections of to the SAP HANA database.
- Configuring your SAP HANA database to force all clients to use a secured connection and to validate all client connection.

### Prerequisites

For enabling SAP HANA SSL, at least SAP HANA Client 2.0 SPS04 is required. For more information, see SAP Note [2784500](#).

[Applying Self-signed Certificates while Running the Software Provisioning Manager \[page 75\]](#)

[Configuring SAP HANA Encryption Parameters \[page 76\]](#)

### 8.11.1 Applying Self-signed Certificates while Running the Software Provisioning Manager

The software provisioning manager can configure the SAP system instances to use the Transport Layer Secure (TLS)/Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol to secure connections of to the SAP HANA database. Self-signed certificates are generated to setup the secure environment for your system using the SAP Cryptographic Library `CommonCryptoLib`.

### Context

If you want to secure your SAP system database connection to the SAP HANA database, TLS/SSL must be configured on both server and client side.

For more information, see section *Configuring Clients for Secure Connections* in the documentation [SAP HANA Client Interface Programming Reference](#).

## Procedure

On the *Database for SAP System* screen, select checkbox *Connect using SSL* and enter the required encryption parameters when requested by the software provisioning manager. For more information, see SAP Note [2891130](#).

## 8.11.2 Configuring SAP HANA Encryption Parameters

Depending on how you have specified parameter `sslEnforce`, the software provisioning manager will configure the connection of the SAP system instances to the SAP HANA database.

## Context

Due to enhanced security standards, you can set up your SAP HANA database using parameter `sslEnforce` in a way that SAP system instances are only allowed to access it using secured and encrypted connections.

For more information, see the information about parameter `sslEnforce` in section *Enforced TLS/SSL for Client Connections* in the SAP HANA Security Guide at: [https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP\\_HANA\\_PLATFORM](https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_HANA_PLATFORM) » » *Security*

## Procedure

1. Start the SAP HANA Database Studio as described in the SAP HANA Administration Guide at: [https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP\\_HANA\\_PLATFORM](https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_HANA_PLATFORM) » » *Administration*
2. If not yet done, add your SAP HANA database system .
3. Log on as user `SYSTEM`.
4. Choose *Configuration*
5. Filter for the `sslEnforce` parameter and change the value according to your requirements.

Default is `false`.

## 8.12 Checking Time Zones

Before you start the software provisioning manager, you need to check time zone settings.




### Context

Before you start the software provisioning manager, compare the following time zone settings:

- The time zone of the target host for the ABAP application server
  - The time zone of the <sid>adm user of the SAP HANA system
- Check the relevant SAP HANA time zone by logging on to the system at the command line with your user <sid>adm and then using command **date**.

### Procedure


If the systems have different time zones, proceed as follows:

- Change the time zone of the ABAP system (recommended solution)
  - If the time zone of the ABAP system cannot be changed, change the time zone of the SAP HANA system.
- For more information, see [https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP\\_HANA\\_PLATFORM](https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_HANA_PLATFORM)  *Installation and Upgrade*  *SAP HANA Server Installation and Update Guide* 

## 8.13 Preparing the Installation Software

This section provides information about how to prepare the required installation archives and software.

### Note

The digital signature of **installation archives and installation media** is checked **automatically** by the software provisioning manager during the *Define Parameters* phase while the *Software Package Browser* or *Media Browser* screens are processed (see also *Running Software Provisioning Manager [page 95]*). The software provisioning manager only accepts archives and media whose digital signature has been checked. For more information, see SAP Note [2393060](#) .

1. [Download and extract the Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 archive. \[page 79\]](#)  
The Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 archive is required on each installation host. Make sure that you always download the latest version.
2. Make yourself familiar with current SAP Kernel releases and SAP's Kernel strategy:

### Central SAP Notes

[2083594](#)  - SAP Kernel Versions and SAP Kernel Patch Levels

[3116151](#) - SP Stack Kernel Schedule Forecast

[1969546](#) - Release Roadmap for Kernel 74x and 75x

[2907361](#) - Release Roadmap for Kernel 77x and 78x

[1802333](#) - Finding information about regressions in the SAP kernel

[19466](#) - Downloading SAP kernel patches

[2966761](#) - Overview of SAP Kernel Correction Archives

[2966621](#) - Overview of Kernel-Related Software Components

[953653](#) - Rolling Kernel Switch

The white paper [Update Strategy for the Kernel of the Application Server ABAP in On Premise Landscapes](#) provides SAP recommendations on how to patch the SAP kernel.

3. [Download the SAP Kernel \[page 80\]](#).

The SAP Kernel archives are required for the installation of the ASCS instance and of each application server instance.

If you perform the installation using a stack configuration file, you can use the software provisioning manager to download the SAP Kernel archives from a Maintenance Planner transaction. For more information, see [Downloading Software Packages for a Maintenance Planner Transaction \[page 83\]](#).

4. [Download the SAP HANA database client software \[page 85\]](#).

The RDBMS media and archives are required for the installation of the SAP HANA database on the SAP HANA host. For more information, see [Installing the SAP HANA Target Database \[page 66\]](#).

#### **i** Note

If you are installing a standard system **on one Linux host**, you can install your SAP system on the **same host** as the SAP HANA database. For more information, see SAP Note [1953429](#). In this case, you must make sure that the SAP HANA database RDBMS media are also available on the installation host.

The SAP HANA database client software is required for the installation of each application server instance.

## Next Steps

[Create and transfer the database backup \[page 88\]](#).

[Downloading and Extracting the Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 Archive \[page 79\]](#)

[Downloading the SAP Kernel Archives \[page 80\]](#)

[Downloading Software Packages for a Maintenance Planner Transaction \[page 83\]](#)

[Downloading the SAP HANA Database Software \[page 85\]](#)

## 8.13.1 Downloading and Extracting the Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 Archive

You must always download and extract the Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 archive from the SAP Software Download Center because you must use the latest version.







### Prerequisites

- Make sure that you use the **latest** version of the SAPCAR tool when manually extracting the software provisioning manager archive. You need the SAPCAR tool to be able to unpack and verify software component archives (\*.SAR files). \*.SAR is the format of software lifecycle media and tools that you can download from the SAP Software Download Center.

#### i Note




An older SAPCAR version might extract archive files in a wrong way and this could prevent the software provisioning manager from working consistently.



Proceed as follows to get the latest version of the SAPCAR tool:

1. Go to <https://launchpad.support.sap.com/#/softwarecenter>  **SUPPORT PACKAGES & PATCHES**  **By Category**  **SAP TECHNOLOGY COMPONENTS**  **SAPCAR** .
2. Select the SAPCAR for your operating system and download it to an empty directory.
3. Even if you have the latest SAPCAR already available, we strongly recommend that you verify its digital signature anyway, unless you downloaded it directly from <https://launchpad.support.sap.com/#/softwarecenter>  yourself. You can do this by verifying the checksum of the downloaded SAPCAR tool:
  1. Depending on what operating system you are using, compute a hash of the downloaded SAPCAR tool, using the SHA-256 algorithm used by SAP.
  2. Now verify the digital signature of the downloaded SAPCAR tool by comparing the hash with the checksum (generated by SAP using the SHA-256 algorithm) from the [Content Info](#) button in the [Related Info](#) column on the right-hand side of the place where you downloaded the SAPCAR tool.
4. To improve usability, we recommend that you rename the executable to **sapcar**.

For more information about SAPCAR, see SAP Note [212876](#) .

### Procedure

1. Download the latest version of the Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 archive SWPM20SP<Support Package Number>\_<Version Number>.SAR from:  
<https://support.sap.com/sltoolset>  **System Provisioning**  **Download Software Provisioning Manager** .
2. Using the latest version of SAPCAR, you can verify the signature of the downloaded SWPM20SP<Support Package Number>\_<Version Number>.SAR archive as follows:

- a. Get the latest version of the SAPCRYPTOLIB archive to your installation host as follows:
  1. Go to <https://launchpad.support.sap.com/#/softwarecenter>  **SUPPORT PACKAGES & PATCHES**  and search for “**sapcryptolib**”.
  2. Select the archive file for your operating system and download it to the same directory where you have put the SAPCAR executable.
  3. Go to the SAPCAR directory and use the following command to extract the SAPCRYPTOLIB archive to the same directory where you have put the SAPCAR executable:  
**sapcar.exe -xvf sapcryptolibp\_84...sar**
  4. Download the Certificate Revocation List from <https://tcs.mysap.com/crl/crlbag.p7s> and move it to the SAPCAR directory.
- b. Verify the signature of the downloaded SWPM20SP<Support Package Number>\_<Version Number>.SAR archive by executing the following command:

#### Note

Check SAP Notes [2178665](#)  and [2568783](#)  whether additional information is available.

```
<Path to SAPCAR>\sapcar.exe -tvVf<Path to Download
Directory>\SWPM20SP<Support Package Number>_<Version Number>.SAR -crl<File
Name of Revocation List>
```

3. Unpack the Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 archive to a local directory using the following command:

```
<Path to SAPCAR>\sapcar.exe -xvf <Path to Download Directory>\SWPM20SP<Support
Package Number>_<Version Number>.SAR -R <Path to Unpack Directory>
```

#### Note

Make sure that all users have read permissions for the directory where you want to unpack the software provisioning manager.

#### Caution

Make sure that you unpack the Software Provisioning Manager archive to a dedicated folder. Do not unpack it to the same folder as other installation media or archives.

## 8.13.2 Downloading the SAP Kernel Archives

This section describes how to download the SAP kernel \*.SAR archives required for an archive-based installation.

### Prerequisites

Make yourself familiar with current SAP Kernel releases and SAP's Kernel strategy:

#### Central SAP Notes



[2083594](#) - SAP Kernel Versions and SAP Kernel Patch Levels

[3116151](#) - SP Stack Kernel Schedule Forecast

[1969546](#) - Release Roadmap for Kernel 74x and 75x

[2907361](#) - Release Roadmap for Kernel 77x and 78x

[1802333](#) - Finding information about regressions in the SAP kernel

[19466](#) - Downloading SAP kernel patches

[2966761](#) - Overview of SAP Kernel Correction Archives

[2966621](#) - Overview of Kernel-Related Software Components

[953653](#) - Rolling Kernel Switch

The white paper [Update Strategy for the Kernel of the Application Server ABAP in On Premise Landscapes](#) provides SAP recommendations on how to patch the SAP kernel.

## Context

The digital signature of **installation archives** is checked **automatically** by the [software provisioning manager](#) [page 95] during the *Define Parameters* phase while processing the *Software Package Browser* screens. The software provisioning manager only accepts archives whose digital signature has been checked. After scanning the archives and verifying the digital signature, an info file is written where you can find detailed information about matching and non-matching archive files. You can access this info file by choosing the *info file* link in the Archive Scanning Result section of the *Software Package Browser* screen. The info file contains only the results of the latest archive scan.

## Procedure

1. Go to <https://launchpad.support.sap.com/#/softwarecenter> > SUPPORT PACKAGES & PATCHES > *By Category*
2. Choose the required software component and release:
  - If you want to install SAP S/4HANA Server <Release>, choose > SAP APPLICATION COMPONENTS > SAP S/4HANA > SAP S/4HANA <Release> > SAP S/4HANA SERVER
  - If you want to install SAP S/4HANA Foundation 1909 or higher, choose > SAP APPLICATION COMPONENTS > SAP S/4HANA > SAP S/4HANA <Release> > SAP S/4HANA FOUNDATION > SAP S/4HANA FOUNDATION <Release>
  - If you want to install foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA, choose > SAP APPLICATION COMPONENTS > ABAP FND ON HANA > ABAP FND 1809 ON HANA
  - If you want to install an SAP BW/4HANA 2.0 server, choose > SAP NetWeaver and complementary products > SAP BW/4HANA > SAP BW/4HANA 2.0 > BW/4HANA SERVER

- If you want to install an SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 server, choose ► [SAP NetWeaver and complementary products](#) ► [SAP BW/4HANA](#) ► [SAP BW/4HANA 2.0](#) ► [BW/4HANA SERVER](#) ►

3. Choose the required package:

### Note

If you perform an additional application server installation, kernel archives - such as `SAPEXE<Version>.SAR`, `SAPEXEDB<Version>.SAR`, `IGSEXE<Version>.SAR`, `igshelper<version>.sar` - are only prompted if they cannot be retrieved from the primary application server instance or the ASCS instance of the existing SAP system.

### Caution

- Make sure that you always use the highest available patch level unless special patch levels are specified for the relevant package in SAP Note [2568783](#).
- Make sure that you always choose `SAPEXE<Version>.SAR`, `SAPEXEDB<Version>.SAR` of the **same** SAP kernel release and extension.

### Example

If `SAPEXE<Version>.SAR` is of version **7.89 PL100**, then `SAPEXEDB<Version>.SAR` must also be of version **7.89 PL100**.

- `SAPEXE<Version>.SAR`  
► [SAP KERNEL <Version> <UC>](#) ► [<Operating System>](#) ► [#DATABASE INDEPENDENT](#) ►
- `SAPEXEDB<Version>.SAR`  
Choose the version corresponding to the `SAPEXE<Version>.SAR` from ► [SAP KERNEL <Version> <UC>](#) ► [<Operating System>](#) ► [<DATABASE>](#) ►
- `igsexe<version>.sar`  
► [SAP IGS <Version>](#) ► [<Operating System>](#) ►
- `igshelper<version>.sar`  
► [SAP IGS HELPER](#) ► [# OS independent](#) ►
- `SAPHOSTAGENT<Version>.SAR`  
► [SAP HOST AGENT 7.22](#) ► [<Operating System>](#) ►

### Note

The `SAPHOSTAGENT<Version>.SAR` archive is only prompted if there is either no SAP Host Agent available on the installation host or you specified during the Define Parameters phase that you want to upgrade an existing version of the SAP Host Agent already available on the installation host. In the latter case, you must specify a higher version of the `SAPHOSTAGENT<Version>.SAR`. Otherwise, the existing SAP Host Agent is not upgraded.

## 8.13.3 Downloading Software Packages for a Maintenance Planner Transaction

The software provisioning manager is now enabled to download all software packages that have been defined in a Maintenance Planner Transaction.

### i Note

This feature is only available if you perform an installation using a stack configuration file.

## Prerequisites

Plan your new SAP system including the required Support Package level (applicable for SAP S/4 HANA, SAP NetWeaver, SAP Business Suite, and SAP Financials) as available in the Maintenance Planner and run `sapinst SAPINST_STACK_XML=<Stack XML file>` in order to benefit from an automated installation process.

## Procedure

1. Specify a download directory for the artifacts (SAP archives) to be downloaded.
2. Start the software provisioning manager as described in [Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 95\]](#).
3. On the *Welcome* screen, choose **►► Generic Options ► Download Software Packages for Maintenance Planner Transaction ►**
4. Follow the instructions on the software provisioning manager screens.

The software provisioning manager prompts you for the following input parameters:

- Maintenance Planner Transaction ID

You can find the Maintenance Planner Transaction ID by one of the following ways:

- In the `MP_Plan_<Transaction ID>_<Generation Date>_.pdf` file which you can download during the *Completed* step in the Maintenance Planner by choosing the *Download PDF* button.
- From the *Transaction ID* column in the list of transactions displayed in the *Transactions* panel in the maintenance planner.
- From the parameter `mopz-transaction-id` in the Stack XML file `MP_Stack_<Transaction ID>_<Generation Date>_.xml` which you can download during the *Download Files* step in the Maintenance Planner by choosing the *Download Stack XML* button.

### i Note

If you started the software provisioning manager using a Stack XML file, the Maintenance Planner Transaction ID is only displayed.

- Your S-UserID and password

You call *Software Provisioning Manager* with command line parameter

**SAPINST\_STACK\_XML=<Absolute\_Path\_To\_Stack\_XML\_File>** to get the *Maintenance Planner Transaction ID* extracted from the Stack XML file.

You must perform this option directly after creating the Maintenance Planner Transaction, because the contained download links usually expire soon.

Ensure the following for your S-User:

1. You have download permissions for all artifacts on <https://launchpad.support.sap.com/#/softwarecenter> to be able to download them.
2. Consider the SAP Support Portal and the SAP ONE Support Launchpad [password policies](#): Your **password must be the same** for both of them. If the passwords are not the same, you will lock the S-User in the SAP Support Portal. The **password must meet all of the following requirements**:
  - Must be **exactly** eight characters long
  - Contains at least one upper-case letter (A-Z)
  - Contains at least one lower-case letter (a-z)
  - Contains at least one decimal digit (0-9)
  - Contains at least one of the following special characters: ! \ @ \$ % / ( { [ ] } ) + - \* = ? ' ~ # \_ . , ; : < >
  - Must not start with ? or !
  - Must not contain any blanks
  - Must not begin with three identical characters
  - Must be different from the last five passwords you have already used
  - Only one password change is allowed per day

If required, request a change of your SAP Support Portal Password **and** of your SAP ONE Support Password at <https://support.sap.com/en/my-support/users.html>.

- Location of download folder for the installation software packages to be downloaded
  - If you have a proxy configured in your network, provide the proxy host and port.
5. You get a list of all downloadable artifacts (SAP archives) as specified in the Stack XML file along with their file size.

You can still deselect downloadable artifacts (SAP archives) that you do not need to be downloaded.

6. Choose *Next* to start the download.

If you get a download error, this is the result of an unsuccessful network connection. Check your network connection and proxy configuration. If the download of some artifacts finishes without any error, but still with a status other than *OK*, you must do one of the following:

- Create an up-to-date Maintenance Plan and perform again the download of the files which were not downloaded successfully. In case of an error, the software provisioning manager skips the download of the artifact (SAR archive) in question and continue with the next one in the list.
- Download the still missing files directly from the SAP Software Center at <https://launchpad.support.sap.com/#/softwarecenter>.

## Results


You have downloaded the artifacts (SAP archives) required for your SAP system installation with the software provisioning manager - corresponding to the archives listed in section [Downloading the SAP Kernel Archives](#)

[page 80] - and for applying the required kernel and support packages using Software Update Manager (SUM) after the installation has completed.

## 8.13.4 Downloading the SAP HANA Database Software

This section describes how to download the SAP HANA 2.0 database client and - if you want to install your SAP system on the same host as the SAP HANA database - the SAP HANA database server software required for the installation.

### Prerequisites


For enabling SAP HANA SSL, at least SAP HANA Client 2.0 SPS04 is required. For more information, see SAP Note [2784500](#) .

### Context

For SAP systems based on ABAP Platform 1809 or higher, the SAP HANA 2.0 database RDBMS and client software is available as installation **archives**.

For SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1, the SAP HANA 2.0 database RDBMS and client software is available as physical installation **media**.

#### i Note

The SAP HANA database server software is only required if you are installing a standard system **on one Linux host**, you can install your SAP system on the **same host** as the SAP HANA database. For more information, see SAP Note [1953429](#) .

The digital signature of **installation archives** is checked **automatically** by the [software provisioning manager \[page 95\]](#) during the [Define Parameters](#) phase while processing the [Software Package Browser](#) screens. The software provisioning manager only accepts archives whose digital signature has been checked. After scanning the archives and verifying the digital signature, an info file is written where you can find detailed information about matching and non-matching archive files. You can access this info file by choosing the [info file](#) link in the Archive Scanning Result section of the [Software Package Browser](#) screen. The info file contains only the results of the latest archive scan.

The digital signature of **installation media** is checked **automatically** by the software provisioning manager during the [Define Parameters](#) phase while the [Media Browser](#) screens are processed (see also [Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 95\]](#)). The software provisioning manager only accepts media whose digital signature has been checked.

## Procedure

1. Create a download directory on the host where you want to run the software provisioning manager.
2. To download SAP HANA database client software, go to:

<https://launchpad.support.sap.com/#/softwarecenter> > SUPPORT PACKAGES & PATCHES > By Category > SAP IN-MEMORY (SAP HANA ) > HANA PLATFORM EDITION > SAP HANA PLATFORM EDITION > SAP HANA PLATFORM EDITION 2.0 > SAP HANA CLIENT 2.0

Download and unpack the ZIP archive, and make it available on the installation host.

### Note

All download objects that are part of an installation medium have the same material number and an individual sequence number:

`<Material_Number>_<Sequence_Number>`

#### Example

51031387\_1

51031387\_2

...

1. Download the objects to the download directory.
2. To correctly re-combine the media that are split into small parts, unpack all parts into the same directory.  
In the unpacking directory, the system creates a subdirectory with a short text describing the medium and copies the data into it. The data is now all in the correct directory, the same as on the medium that was physically produced. For more information, see SAP Note [1258173](#).

### Caution

Make sure that you unpack each installation media to a separate folder. Do not unpack installation media to the same folder where you unpack the Software Provisioning Manager archive.

Do not unpack installation media to the same folder where you unpack the SAP kernel archives for archive-based installation.

3. To download the SAP HANA 2.0 database RDBMS media, go to <https://launchpad.support.sap.com/#/softwarecenter> > Installations & Upgrades > By Category > SAP IN-MEMORY (SAP HANA ) > SAP HANA PLATFORM EDITION 2.0 > INSTALLATION.

### Note

This step is only required if you are installing a standard system **on one Linux host**, you can install your SAP system on the **same host** as the SAP HANA database. For more information, see SAP Note [1953429](#). Only in this case, you must make sure that the SAP HANA database RDBMS media are also available on the installation host.

- If you want to install an SAP system based on ABAP Platform 1809 or higher, download the database RDBMS archives and make them available on the installation host. Do **not** unpack it but just provide it when you are prompted during the installation process.  
Make the database client archive available on the installation host. Do **not** unpack it but just provide it when you are prompted during the installation process.
- If you want to install SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1, download the database RDBMS media and make them available on the installation host.

### Note

All download objects that are part of an installation medium have the same material number and an individual sequence number:

`<Material_Number>_<Sequence_Number>`

### Example

51031387\_1

51031387\_2

...

1. Download the objects to the download directory.
2. To correctly re-combine the media that are split into small parts, unpack all parts into the same directory.  
In the unpacking directory, the system creates a subdirectory with a short text describing the medium and copies the data into this subdirectory. The data is now all in the correct directory, the same as on the medium that was physically produced. For more information, see SAP Note [1258173](#).

### Caution

Make sure that you unpack each installation media to a separate folder. Do not unpack installation media to the same folder where you unpack the Software Provisioning Manager archive.

Do not unpack installation media to the same folder where you unpack the SAP kernel archives for archive-based installation.

4. If you want to use SAP liveCache on SAP HANA, you must install the `LCAPPS` package on the database server.

For more information, see the *SAP MaxDB Administration Guide* at <https://help.sap.com/maxdb> and *Application Help* and SAP Note [2979266](#).

# 9 System Copy Procedure

## Copying a Complete SAP System

1. Create that database backup on the source SAP HANA database host and transfer it to the target SAP HANA database host as described in [Creating and Transferring the SAP HANA Database Backup \[page 88\]](#).
2. Install the target system as described in [Installing the Target System \[page 90\]](#).

### i Note

During the target system installation, the password of the SYSTEM user of the SAP HANA source database is requested. Make sure you have this password at hand.

3. **Next Steps:**  
[Follow-Up Activities \[page 116\]](#)

## Copying Single Instances Only

If you only want to copy single instances, choose the appropriate procedure from the following:

- [Copying the Primary Application Server Instance Only \[page 113\]](#)
- [Copying the Database Only – Refresh Database Content \[page 114\]](#)

## 9.1 Creating and Transferring the SAP HANA Database Backup

This section describes how to create the SAP HANA database backup and how to transfer it to the target system.

### Prerequisites

You have specified a directory with sufficient disk space (20 GB minimum) as the backup destination. For improved data safety, we recommend that you specify an external backup destination.



## Process Flow

1. [Create the backup of the source database \[page 89\]](#).
2. [Transfer the backup to the target database system. \[page 90\]](#)

### 9.1.1 Creating the Backup of the SAP HANA Source Database System

This section describes how to create a SAP HANA database backup using the SAP HANA Database Studio.

#### Procedure

##### i Note

Customer-specific changes to the SAP HANA database configuration are not saved as part of the data backup.

##### i Note

As a result of the SAP HANA database backup, a dump of the SAP HANA database schema belonging to the source SAP system is stored in the backup. During the entire life-cycle of this backup dump, you must ensure adequate protection from unauthorized read access and modification of the backup data. For more information about how to do this and about supported encryption types, follow the instructions in the *SAP HANA Backup Encryption* section in the *SAP HANA Administration Guide for SAP HANA Platform* at: [http://help.sap.com/hana\\_platform](http://help.sap.com/hana_platform) ►► [Operate](#) ► [Administration](#) ►.

For detailed information about the following steps, see the *SAP HANA Database Backup and Recovery* section in the *SAP HANA Administration Guide for SAP HANA Platform* at [http://help.sap.com/hana\\_platform](http://help.sap.com/hana_platform) ►► [Operate](#) ► [Administration](#) ►

1. In the SAP HANA Studio, right-click the database system that is to be copied and choose [Backup ....](#)  
If you use SAP HANA multitenant database containers, right-click on the SYSTEMDB database of the system to be copied and choose [Backup Tenant Database ....](#)
2. Select [Complete Data Backup](#) as the [Backup Type](#) and select [File](#) or [Backint](#) as the [Destination Type](#).

If you select [File](#) as the [Destination Type](#), proceed as follows:

Under [Backup Destination](#), specify the directory in which you want to store the backup files.

For both backup types, proceed as follows: Under [Backup Prefix](#), specify a prefix for the backup file.

Ensure that the backup directory contains sufficient free space for the backup and that no backup with the same prefix already exists there.

Then choose [Next](#).

3. Check your entries and choose [Finish](#) to start the backup or choose [Back](#) to correct your entries.
4. Wait until the backup has been created and then close the dialog box.

## Next Steps

[Transfer the Backup to the SAP HANA target database \[page 90\].](#)

## Related Information

[SAP Note 1844468](#) 

## 9.1.2 Transferring the Backup to the SAP HANA Target Database System.

### Procedure

Copy all files of the backup to the directory that can be read from the target database system. The backup files are located in the directory of the source database system that is specified in step 1 and begin with the prefix that is specified in [Creating the Backup of the SAP HANA Source Database System \[page 89\]](#).

## 9.2 Installing the Target System

This installation checklist guides you through the required installation steps for the target system:

[Installation Checklist \[page 90\]](#)

### 9.2.1 Installation Checklist

This section includes the installation steps for the following:

- Standard system
- Distributed system
- High-availability system

- Additional application server instance

Detailed information about the steps are available in the linked sections.

### i Note

As a post-step during the refresh database content scenario (see [Copying the Database Only – Refresh Database Content \[page 114\]](#)), the software provisioning manager connects to the target SAP system via remote function call (RFC). Since the certificates are from the source system, make sure that secure network communications (SNC) is turned off for the RFC, or at least that the insecure RFC connection is allowed. This is only necessary during the short time of the post-processing steps, and after they are completed, you can turn SNC back on.

### i Note

The SAP HANA database is normally pre-installed by SAP partners before you start the installation. For more information about how to install the SAP HANA database, see the [SAP HANA Server Installation and Update Guide](#) at [https://help.sap.com/hana\\_platform](https://help.sap.com/hana_platform) ►► [Implement](#) ► [Installation and Upgrade](#) ►. The contents of the database instance are remotely installed by the software provisioning manager from the primary application server host.

On the [Database for SAP System](#) screen, enter the [Database Host](#) and the [Instance Number](#) for your SAP HANA database host. If the instance does not exist, a **new SAP HANA database instance will be installed on the same host as the SAP system..**

## Standard System

1. You [check the prerequisites \[page 93\]](#) and [run the software provisioning manager \[page 95\]](#) to install the SAP system.

### i Note

In a standard system, all mandatory instances except the database instance are installed on one host.

2. You continue with [Post-Installation \[page 116\]](#).

## Distributed System

1. On the ASCS instance host, you [check the prerequisites \[page 93\]](#) and [run the software provisioning manager \[page 95\]](#) to install the ABAP central services instance.

### i Note

If you want to install an ASCS instance [with embedded SAP Web Dispatcher \[page 35\]](#) or [with embedded SAP Gateway \[page 37\]](#) or both, you must choose the *Custom* parameter mode.

When processing the screens for the ASCS instance installation, you are prompted to mark the corresponding checkbox on the screen [Additional Components to be Included in the ASCS Instance](#).

If you mark the checkbox for SAP Web Dispatcher, you are prompted for the additional parameters required for the SAP Web Dispatcher installation on the subsequent screens.

2. On the primary application server instance host, you [check the prerequisites \[page 93\]](#) and [run the software provisioning manager \[page 95\]](#) to install the contents of the database instance.
3. On the primary application server instance host, you [check the prerequisites \[page 93\]](#) and [run the software provisioning manager \[page 95\]](#) to install the primary application server instance.
4. If required, you install 1 to <N> additional application server instances on the respective hosts, as described later in this section.
5. You continue with [Post-Installation \[page 116\]](#).

Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

## High-Availability System

1. To install a high-availability system with Microsoft Failover Clustering, you perform the [HA-specific installation steps \[page 181\]](#).
2. You continue with [Post-Installation \[page 116\]](#).

End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

## Additional Application Server Instance

You perform the following steps on each host where you install the additional application server instances.

1. You [check the prerequisites \[page 93\]](#) and [run the software provisioning manager \[page 95\]](#) to install the additional application server instances.

Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

### ⚠ Caution

In a high-availability system, you must install at least **one** additional application server instance.

End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

2. You continue with [Post-Installation \[page 116\]](#).

## 9.2.2 Specifying the Initial Data Source of the User Management Engine

During the installation of your SAP system, you have to specify the initial data source of the User Management Engine (UME).

### Prerequisites

You have planned how you want to configure user and access management for your SAP system to be installed as described in [Planning User and Access Management \[page 44\]](#).

### Procedure

#### Using Central User Management

1. You install your SAP system as described in this installation guide.
2. Add the system to Central User Administration (CUA). For more information, see [Configuring User Management \[page 138\]](#).

#### Using an LDAP directory as Source for User Data

1. You install your SAP system as described in this installation guide.
2. Configure the user management of the newly installed SAP system to use an LDAP directory. For more information, see [Configuring User Management \[page 138\]](#).

## 9.2.3 Prerequisites for Running Software Provisioning Manager

Make sure you fulfil the following prerequisites before running the software provisioning manager.

- For the SL-UI, make sure that the following web browser requirements are met:
  - You have one of the following supported browsers on the device where you want to run the SL-UI:
    - Google Chrome (recommended)
    - Mozilla Firefox
    - Microsoft Edge
    - Microsoft Internet Explorer 11 or higher.Always use the latest version of these web browsers.
- If you copy the SL-UI URL manually in the browser window, make sure that you open a new Web browser window in private browsing mode (Internet Explorer), incognito mode (Chrome) or private browsing mode (Firefox). This is to prevent Web browser plugins and settings from interfering with the SL-UI.

### ⚠ Caution

The software provisioning manager uses a self-signed certificate, which is used temporarily only while the software provisioning manager is running. This certificate is not trusted by the browser unless it is imported manually by the user running the software provisioning manager. This behavior is intentionally designed in this way because - unlike ordinary public web servers - the software provisioning manager has different usage patterns. You must configure your browser to trust the self-issued certificate of the software provisioning manager after carefully performing the “thumbprint” verification described in [Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 95\]](#) . For more information about adding trusted certificates, see the documentation of your browser.

For more information about the SL-UI, see [Useful Information about Software Provisioning Manager \[page 99\]](#).

- If you want to enable Internet Protocol Version 6 (IPv6), make sure that you set **SAP\_IPv6\_ACTIVE=1** in the environment of the user with the [required authorization \[page 70\]](#) to run the software provisioning manager. While running the software provisioning manager, this setting is then also added to the environment of the `<sapsid>adm` user.

### i Note

By applying this setting the SAP system administrator is responsible for configuring the IP version on each host of the system landscape, before installing any additional instance to it.

- You need at least 700 MB of free space in the installation directory for each installation option. In addition, you need 700 MB free space for the software provisioning manager executables. The software provisioning manager creates an installation directory `sapinst_instdir`, where it keeps its log files, and which is located directly in the `%ProgramFiles%` directory. For more information, see [Useful Information about Software Provisioning Manager \[page 99\]](#).
- Make sure that you have defined the most important SAP system parameters as described in [Basic Installation Parameters \[page 46\]](#) **before** you start the installation.
- Check that your installation host meets the requirements for the installation options that you want to install.  
For more information, see [Running the Prerequisite Checker \[page 40\]](#).
- Make sure that the database is **up and running** before starting the installation.
- If you want to install an additional application server instance in an existing SAP system, make sure that:
  - The service definitions for the SAP start services are configured correctly and refer to the correct profile files.
  - There are no profile backup files with an underscore “\_” in their profile name. If so, replace the “\_” with a “.”.

### ❁ Example

```
Rename <Drive>:\usr\sap\S14\SYS\profile\S14_D20_wsi6408_12 to  
<Drive>:\usr\sap\S14\SYS\profile\S14_DVEBMGS20_wsi6408.12.
```

- Make sure that the following ports are not used by other processes:
  - Port 4237 is used by default as HTTPS port for communication between the software provisioning manager and the SL-UI.  
If this port cannot be used, you can assign a free port number by executing `sapinst.exe` with the following command line parameter:  
**SAPINST\_HTTPS\_PORT=<Free Port Number>**

- Port 4239 is used by default for displaying the feedback evaluation form at the end of the software provisioning manager processing.  
The filled-out evaluation form is then sent to SAP using HTTPS.  
If this port cannot be used, you can assign a free port number by executing `sapinst.exe` with the following command line parameter:  
**`SAPINST_HTTP_PORT=<Free Port Number>`**
- If you want to perform the installation in unattended mode, see [System Provisioning Using an Input Parameter File \[page 101\]](#) which describes an improved procedure using `infile.params`.

## 9.2.4 Running Software Provisioning Manager

This section describes how to run the software provisioning manager.

### Prerequisites

For more information, see [Prerequisites for Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 93\]](#).

### Context

The software provisioning manager has a web browser-based GUI named “SL-UI of the software provisioning manager” - “SL-UI” for short.

This procedure describes an installation where you run the software provisioning manager and use the SL-UI, that is you can control the processing of the software provisioning manager from a browser running on any device.

For more information about the SL-UI, see [Useful Information about Software Provisioning Manager \[page 99\]](#).

### Procedure

1. Log on to the installation host using an account with the [required user authorization to run the software provisioning manager \[page 70\]](#).

#### ⚠ Caution

Do **not** use an existing `<sapsid>adm` or the built-in administrator account user.

If your security policy requires that the person running the software provisioning manager is not allowed to know administrator credentials on the installation host, you can specify another operating system user for authentication purposes. You do this using the `SAPINST_REMOTE_ACCESS_USER` parameter when

starting `sapinst.exe` from the command line. You must confirm that the user is a trusted one. For more information, see SAP Note [1745524](#).

2. Make the installation software available.

For more information, see [Preparing the Installation Software \[page 77\]](#).

#### **i** Note

**SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 only:** Even if you use the complete SAP kernel media, the software provisioning manager might prompt you during the provisioning process for additional archives (\*.SAR files) due to special Patch Level (PL) requirements depending on categories such as the product, operating system, and database platform.

<X> of the `SAPXEDB.SAR` (for DBTYPE <Y>), but this PL of the `SAPXEDB.SAR` is not contained in the SAP kernel media. In this case you must download the required PL from <https://launchpad.support.sap.com/#/softwarecenter> following the instructions given in [Downloading the SAP Kernel Archives \[page 80\]](#).

3. Start the software provisioning manager from the directory to which you unpacked the Software Provisioning Manager archive with the following command:

`sapinst.exe` (in a command prompt)

`.\sapinst.exe` (in PowerShell)

By default, the SL-UI uses the default browser defined for the host where you run the software provisioning manager. However, you can also specify another supported web browser available on the host where you start the software provisioning manager. You can do this by starting the `sapinst` executable with command line option `SAPINST_BROWSER=<Path to Browser Executable>`, for example `SAPINST_BROWSER=firefox.exe`.

#### **i** Note

If you want to set the connectivity data for your SAP HANA database, you can add a parameter when calling `sapinst` as follows:

- ABAP secure storage in the file system (SSFS):  
`sapinst.exe HDB_ABAP_SSFS=YES`
- If you want to assign virtual host names, you must start the software provisioning manager with the `SAPINST_USE_HOSTNAME` command line parameter as follows:
  1. Open a command prompt or PowerShell window in elevated mode and change to the directory to which you unpacked the Software Provisioning Manager archive.
  2. Start the software provisioning manager with the following command:  
`sapinst.exe SAPINST_USE_HOSTNAME=<Virtual_Host_Name>` (in a command prompt)  
`.\sapinst.exe SAPINST_USE_HOSTNAME=<Virtual_Host_Name>` (in PowerShell)

For more information, see [Setting Connectivity Data for the SAP HANA Database \[page 67\]](#).

4. The software provisioning manager now starts and waits for the connection with the SL-UI.

If you have a supported web browser (see [Prerequisites for Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 93\]](#)) installed on the host where you run the software provisioning manager, the SL-UI starts automatically by displaying the *Welcome* screen.

If the SL-UI does not open automatically, you can find the URL you require to access the SL-UI at the bottom of the *Program Starter* window of the software provisioning manager. You find the icon of the



*Program Starter* window in the taskbar of your Windows host. Open a supported web browser and run the URL from there.

```
...
*****
Open your browser and paste the following URL address to access the GUI
https://[<hostname>]:4237/sapinst/docs/index.html
Logon users: [<users>]
*****
...
```

### **i** Note

If the host specified by `<hostname>` cannot be reached due to a special network configuration, proceed as follows:

1. Terminate the software provisioning manager as described in [Useful Information about Software Provisioning Manager \[page 99\]](#).
2. Restart the software provisioning manager from the command line with the `SAPINST_GUI_HOSTNAME=<hostname>` property.  
You can use a fully-qualified host name.

### **⚠** Caution

After opening the browser URL, make sure that the URL in the browser starts with “https://” to avoid security risks such as SSL stripping .

Before you reach the *Welcome* screen, your browser warns you that the certificate of the `sapinst` process on this computer could not be verified.

Proceed as follows to avoid security risks such as a man-in-the-middle attack:

1. Click on the certificate area on the left hand side in the address bar of your browser, and view the certificate.
2. Open the certificate fingerprint or thumbprint, and compare all hexadecimal numbers to the ones displayed in the console output of the software provisioning manager.  
Proceed as follows to get the certificate fingerprint or thumbprint from the server certificate printed in the software provisioning manager console:
  1. Go to the `sapinst_exe.xxxxxx.xxxx` directory in the temporary directory to which the software provisioning manager has extracted itself:  
`%userprofile%\sapinst\`
  2. In the `sapinst_exe.xxxxxx.xxxx` directory, execute the `sapgenpse` tool with the command line option `get_my_name -p`.  
As a result, you get the server fingerprint or thumbprint from the server certificate.
3. Accept the warning to inform your browser that it can trust this site, even if the certificate could not be verified.

The SL-UI opens in the browser by displaying the *Welcome* screen.

5. On the *Welcome* screen, choose the required option:

### **i** Note

Products with the addition “SAP internal only” are only for SAP internal purposes and may not be used outside of this purpose.

- To perform the target system installation for a complete SAP system using an SAP HANA database backup, choose **> <Product> <Product Version> > <Database> > System Copy > Target System > <Distribution Option> >**.
- If the target system already exists and you only want to replace the content of the database, choose **> Generic Options > Refresh Database Content >**.  
For more information, see [Copying the Database Only – Refresh Database Content \[page 114\]](#).

6. Choose *Next*.

#### **i Note**

If there are errors during the self-extraction process of the software provisioning manager, you can find the log file `dev_selfex.out` in the temporary directory.

7. If the software provisioning manager prompts you to log off from your system, log off and log on again.  
The software provisioning manager restarts automatically.
8. Follow the instructions on the software provisioning manager screens and enter the required parameters.
  - In the *SAP System Database* screen, choose *Homogeneous System Copy (SAP HANA-specific Backup/Recovery)*.
  - In the *Database Schema* screens, enter the schema names and the passwords that match the data in the backup. For example, if you install a DEV system and use a backup of the PRD system for the installation, you must specify SAPPRD as the schema in the screens instead of SAPDEV. The same applies to the DBA Cockpit schema.
  - In the *Database Recovery* screens, first enter the password of the `<sapsid>adm` user of the target database and the related SAPControl URL.  
The system prefills the SAPControl URL. It usually does not have to be changed. In addition, select *File* or *Backint* as the *Destination Type* in accordance with the backup type created in step 1.
  - In the next screen, enter the directory and the name (prefix) of the backup. As the directory, enter the directory to which you copied the backup files in step 2. As a prefix enter the prefix of the backup that you chose in step 1. In the case of a Backint backup, enter the database SID `<DBSID>` of the source system. In the case of a file backup, you can also specify whether you want the system to check whether the backup exists. If this check is deactivated and the backup does not exist, the installation will terminate with an error at a later time.
  - In the SAP HANA License screen, you can then choose whether or not you want to install a new SAP HANA license in the target database system. A new license is required because the backup that is to be implemented in the target database system derives from another source database, that is the hardware or the `<DBSID>` has changed.
9. To start the installation, choose *Next*.

The software provisioning manager starts the installation and displays the progress of the installation. When the installation has finished, the software provisioning manager shows the message: `Execution of <Option_Name> has completed.`

10. If required install an additional application server instance for a standard (central) or distributed system.
11. If you copied the software provisioning manager software to your hard disk, you can delete these files when the installation has successfully completed.
12. For security reasons, we recommend that you delete the `.sapinst` directory within the home directory of the user with which you ran the software provisioning manager:

```
%userprofile%\sapinst\
```

13. The software provisioning manager log files contain IP addresses and User IDs such as the ID of your S-User. For security, data protection, and privacy-related reasons we strongly recommend that you delete these log files once you do not need them any longer.

You find the software provisioning manager log files in the `sapinst_instdir` directory. For more information, see [Useful Information about Software Provisioning Manager \[page 99\]](#).

## 9.2.5 Additional Information about Software Provisioning Manager

The following sections provide additional information about the software provisioning manager.

[Useful Information about Software Provisioning Manager \[page 99\]](#)

[System Provisioning Using an Input Parameter File \[page 101\]](#)

[How to Avoid Automatic Logoff by Software Provisioning Manager \[page 105\]](#)

[Restarting Interrupted Processing of Software Provisioning Manager \[page 107\]](#)

[Entries in the Services File Created by Software Provisioning Manager \[page 110\]](#)

[Troubleshooting with Software Provisioning Manager \[page 111\]](#)

[Using the Step State Editor \(SAP Support Experts Only\) \[page 112\]](#)

### 9.2.5.1 Useful Information about Software Provisioning Manager

This section contains some useful technical background information about the software provisioning manager and the software provisioning manager's SL-UI.

- The software provisioning manager has a framework named "SAPinst". For more information about the current SAPinst Framework version and its features, see SAP Note [3207613](#) (SAPinst Framework 753 Central Note).
- The software provisioning manager has the web browser-based "SL-UI of the software provisioning manager" - "SL-UI" for short.

The SL-UI uses the SAP UI Development Toolkit for HTML5 - also known as SAPUI5 - a client-side HTML5 rendering library based on JavaScript. The benefits of this new user interface technology for the user are:

- Zero foot print, since only a web browser is required on the client
- New controls and functionality, for example, view logs in web browser.

As of version 2.0 SP01 Patch Level (PL) 5, the software provisioning manager comes with a new look and feel of the SL-UI. For more information, see <https://blogs.sap.com/2018/11/10/new-look-for-software-provisioning-manager/>.

The SL-UI connects the web browser on a client with the `sapinst` executable - which is part of software provisioning manager - running on the installation host using the standard protocol HTTPS.

For the SL-UI, the software provisioning manager provides a pre-generated URL in the *Program Starter* window. If you have a supported web browser installed on the host where you run the software provisioning manager, the SL-UI starts automatically.

By default, the SL-UI uses the default browser defined for the host where you run the software provisioning manager. However, you can also specify another supported web browser available on the host where you start the software provisioning manager. You can do this by starting the `sapinst` executable with command line option `SAPINST_BROWSER=<Path to Browser Executable>`, for example `SAPINST_BROWSER=firefox.exe`.

Alternatively you can open a supported web browser on any device and run the URL from there.

For more information about supported web browsers see [Prerequisites for Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 93\]](#).

If you need to run the **SL-UI in accessibility mode**, apply the standard accessibility functions of your web browser.

- As soon as you have started the `sapinst.exe` executable, the software provisioning manager creates a `.sapinst` directory underneath the `<Drive>:\Users\<User>` directory where it keeps its logs and other technical files. `<User>` is the user which you used to start the software provisioning manager. After you have reached the [Welcome](#) screen and selected the relevant software provisioning manager option for the SAP system or instance to be installed, the software provisioning manager creates a directory `sapinst_instdir`, where it keeps its logs and other technical files, and which is located directly in the `%ProgramFiles%` directory. If the software provisioning manager is not able to create `sapinst_instdir` there, it tries to create `sapinst_instdir` in the directory defined by the `TEMP` environment variable.  
All log files which have been stored so far in the `.sapinst` folder are moved to the `sapinst_instdir` directory as soon as the latter has been created.  
The software provisioning manager records its progress in the `keydb.xml` file located in the `sapinst_instdir` directory. Therefore, if required, you can continue with the software provisioning manager from any point of failure, without having to repeat the already completed steps and without having to reenter the already processed input parameters. For security reasons, a variable encryption key is generated as soon as the `sapinst_instdir` directory is created by the software provisioning manager. This key is used to encrypt the values written to the `keydb.xml` file.

#### → Recommendation

We recommend that you keep all installation directories until the system is completely and correctly installed.

- The software provisioning manager extracts itself to a temporary directory (`TEMP`, `TMP`, `TMPDIR`, or `SystemRoot`). These executables are deleted after the software provisioning manager has stopped running.  
Directories called `sapinst_exe.xxxxxx.xxxx` sometimes remain in the temporary directory after the software provisioning manager has finished. You can safely delete them.  
The temporary directory also contains the log file `dev_selfex.out` from the self-extraction process of the software provisioning manager, which might be useful if an error occurs.

#### ⚠ Caution

If the software provisioning manager cannot find a temporary directory, the installation terminates with the error `FCO-00058`.

- To see a list of all available software provisioning manager properties (command line options) and related documentation, open a command prompt and start the software provisioning manager with command line parameter `-p`:  
`sapinst -p`

- If you want to perform the installation in unattended mode, see [System Provisioning Using an Input Parameter File \[page 101\]](#) which describes an improved procedure using `infile.params`.
- If required, stop the software provisioning manager by choosing the [Cancel](#) button.

#### **i Note**

If you need to terminate the software provisioning manager, choose **File > Exit** in the menu of the *Program Starter* window.

## 9.2.5.2 System Provisioning Using an Input Parameter File

Provisioning with software provisioning manager, for example installation, of SAP systems in unattended mode with an input parameter file.

### Prerequisites

Provisioning of SAP systems can also be done in unattended mode without the user interface of software provisioning manager. This means that, after inserting the required parameters into a parameter-file and running the `sapinst` executable by providing the path to this parameter-file, the installation will run in the background and no further user interaction is required.

### Context

This section describes the steps that you need to execute in addition to the procedure described in this guide, when running software provisioning manager in unattended mode using an input parameter file.

Since the new Web-based SL-UI (see [Useful Information about Software Provisioning Manager \[page 99\]](#)) was introduced in 2017 there are two ways to run the unattended mode: “`observer mode`” and “`non-observer mode`”.

#### Observer Mode

If you are running an installation in unattended mode but you are sitting in front of the screen, you might want to check the progress from time to time. In this case the “`observer mode`” makes sense.

Start the installation as described below in the Solution section, using the following parameters:

```
SAPINST_INPUT_PARAMETERS_URL=<path_to_your_parameterfile>
SAPINST_EXECUTE_PRODUCT_ID=<product-id for the installation>
SAPINST_SKIP_DIALOGS=true
```

The software provisioning manager will start the installation in the background AND start a Web Dispatcher and provide an URL to access the SL-UI. The user who has started the installation can now connect to the URL and observe the progress of the installation, for example to look at the logfiles in the Web browser. However, all parameters will be taken from the input parameter file and can not be changed in the Web browser.

## Non-Observer Mode

Choose that mode if you want to run a “scripted” or by other means automated scenario, for example overnight. In that case it is crucial that the process is started without a Web Dispatcher and therefore without the software provisioning manager's SL-UI. Otherwise, the automation could be stuck if software provisioning manager encounters a situation that requires user interaction.

Start the installation as described below in the Solution section, using the following parameters (use the same parameters like for Observer Mode, but provide **SAPINST\_START\_GUISERVER=false** in addition):

```
SAPINST_INPUT_PARAMETERS_URL=<path_to_your_parameterfile>
SAPINST_EXECUTE_PRODUCT_ID=<product-id for the installation>
SAPINST_SKIP_DIALOGS=true
SAPINST_START_GUISERVER=false
```

This will start the installation but this time **NO** Web Dispatcher will be started and no URL to access the SL-UI will be provided either. So the user can not follow the processing of the installation in a Web browser and the installation will run completely in the background.

If the process runs into an error, the software provisioning manager will abort and you have to check for the reason in the log files.

## Restrictions

In exceptional cases, parameters prompted or displayed in the Software Provisioning Manager UI are not maintainable in the input parameter file. If one of those parameters, that are only available in the UI mode of the Software Provisioning Manager, is needed for your unattended installations, you should create a ticket in the best fitting component below BC-INS to get the issue analyzed.

## Must Know about the Input Parameter File

- The input parameter file only contains values that you entered in the software provisioning manager's SL-UI.
- With the `SAPinst 749.0.69` or by other means patch we provide a better encryption of passwords in software provisioning manager files:  
If the input parameter file has parameters which are encrypted with Des25 encryption, the `instkey.pkey` file available in the installation directory contains the key for the encryption. The `instkey.pkey` file must be always located in the same directory as the input parameter file and is used to decrypt the values of the encrypted parameters. If you need to copy an input parameter file to another directory, you must also copy the `instkey.pkey` file to this directory.
- Not explicitly set parameters are documented as comments in the generated input parameter file.
- Each parameter has got a documentation assigned as a comment on top.

### ❖ Example

Example for a parameter that is not used and therefore commented out:

```
# Specify whether software provisioning manager is to drop the schema if
it exists. <= Documentation
# HDB_Schema_Check_Dialogs.dropSchema = false
```

### ❖ Example

Example for a parameter that is used:

```
# The name of the database schema. <= Documentation
```

```
HDB_Schema_Check_Dialogs.schemaName = SAPABAP2
```

- You have to manually provide the media information, using the following convention:

```
SAPINST.CD.PACKAGE.<unique_media_name>=<location>
```

- For each media location you must **manually** insert a dedicated line in your input parameter file. The software provisioning manager does not automatically take over the media locations you entered while processing the *Media Browser* dialog.
- For **<media\_name>** you can choose any value, but the **<location>** must be unique.
- To find out the required media entries, open the summary.html file which you can find in the installation directory and go to the *Dialog "Media"* section.
- Make sure that you enter the full paths to all required media, relative paths are not sufficient.

#### ❖ Example

Example on UNIX:

```
SAPINST.CD.PACKAGE.KERNEL = /mnt/KERNEL
SAPINST.CD.PACKAGE.LOAD = /mnt/LOAD
SAPINST.CD.PACKAGE.RDBMS = /mnt/RDBMS
```

#### ❖ Example

Example on Windows:

```
SAPINST.CD.PACKAGE.KERNEL = C:\sapdvds\KERNEL
SAPINST.CD.PACKAGE.LOAD = C:\sapdvds\LOAD
SAPINST.CD.PACKAGE.RDBMS = C:\sapdvds\RDBMS
```

- If one media contains several subfolders, you can specify it in one of the following ways:

#### ❖ Example

The SAP Export DVDs/media:

```
Installation Master      /usr/local/TESE/SWPM/slinst_d_stream/
IM_OS400_PPC64
Installation Export NW73 (folder EXP1)      /sapmnt/mediaserver2/
arch04_6/51042309/DATA_UNITS/EXP1
Installation Export NW73 (folder EXP3)      /sapmnt/mediaserver2/
arch04_6/51042309/DATA_UNITS/EXP3
Installation Export NW73 (folder EXP2)      /sapmnt/mediaserver2/
arch04_6/51042309/DATA_UNITS/EXP2
```

- By specifying each subfolder:

```
SAPINST.CD.PACKAGE.ExportNW73EXP1=/sapmnt/mediaserver2/
arch04_6/51042309/DATA_UNITS/EXP1

SAPINST.CD.PACKAGE.ExportNW73EXP2=/sapmnt/mediaserver2/
arch04_6/51042309/DATA_UNITS/EXP3

SAPINST.CD.PACKAGE.ExportNW73EXP3=/sapmnt/mediaserver2/
arch04_6/51042309/DATA_UNITS/EXP3
```

- By specifying only the root-folder:

```
SAPINST.CD.PACKAGE.ExportNW73=/sapmnt/mediaserver2/arch04_6/51042309
```

- **Restriction:** Currently you can only specify complete media, not paths to single files like \*.SAR archives.
- When performing a system copy, you need to add one additional media path:

```
SAPINST.CD.PACKAGE.MIGRATION1 = <full path to HANA backup>
```

- **Caution:**  
If you want to use archives for your installation, you must copy all files that are to be used to a single directory. In the input parameter file you must specify this directory as a download basket, using the `archives.downloadBasket` parameter.  
Make sure that there is only one version of the same archive in the directory, for example  
`SAPEXE_<Version>.SAR`

## Procedure

1. You plan and prepare the run as described in [Planning \[page 27\]](#)[Planning \[page 24\]](#) and [Preparation \[page 65\]](#)[Preparation \[page 62\]](#).
2. Create your input parameter file as follows:
  1. Start software provisioning manager as described in [Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 95\]](#).
  2. Choose the option you want to run, and follow the instructions on the screens by entering all parameter values.
  3. Stop after the *Parameter Summary* screen has been displayed.
  4. Find the input parameter file named "inifile.params" in the installation directory.
    - In the same directory, you will also find the `instkey.pkey` file with the keys for the encrypted parameters. For more information, see *Must Know about the Input Parameter File* above.
    - In the same directory, you will also find the `summary.html` file with the required media locations. For more information, see *Must Know about the Input Parameter File* above.
  5. If required, you can rename the "inifile.params" file as you wish.
3. Adjust the values of the input parameter file as follows:
  1. Edit your input parameter file and modify the parameters according to your needs.
  2. Add required media or archives information line by line.
4. Identify the Product-ID:
  - To start in unattended mode, you need to know the component ID for the option that are required for your provisioning scenario.  
Proceed as follows:
    1. Open the `sapinst_dev.log` in the installation directory.
    2. Check for the "product-id"

### ❖ Example

```
product-id=NW_ABAP_ASCS:NW750.ADA.ABAP
```



- Alternatively, you can check the header of the generated input parameter file.

#### ❖ Example

```
product id 'NW_ABAP_ASCS:NW750.ADA.ABAP'
```

- Run the software provisioning manager [\[page 95\]](#) with the parameters required for unattended mode:
  - Make sure that the `instkey.pkey` file with the keys for the encrypted parameters is available in the same directory as the input parameter file. Otherwise the encrypted parameters cannot be decrypted. For more information, see *Must Know about the Input Parameter File* above.
  - In observer mode:** Start the `sapinst` executable from an empty directory with the following parameters:
 

```
SAPINST_INPUT_PARAMETERS_URL=<path_to_your_parameterfile>
SAPINST_EXECUTE_PRODUCT_ID=<product-id for the installation>
SAPINST_SKIP_DIALOGS=true
```
  - In non-observer mode:** Start the `sapinst` executable from an empty directory with the following parameters:
 

```
SAPINST_INPUT_PARAMETERS_URL=<path_to_your_parameterfile>
SAPINST_EXECUTE_PRODUCT_ID=<product-id for the installation>
SAPINST_SKIP_DIALOGS=true
SAPINST_START_GUI_SERVER=false
```
- After software provisioning manager has completed, perform follow-up activities as described in [Post-Installation \[page 116\]](#) [Follow-Up Activities \[page 116\]](#).

## Related Information

[SAP Note 2230669 Provisioning with software provisioning manager - for example installation - of SAP systems in unattended mode with an input parameter file](#) 📄

[SAP Note 2849054 Software Update Manager Automation with software provisioning manager](#) 📄

[SAP Note 2742212 Unattended installation fails with "Empty directory name is not allowed." message](#) 📄

[SAP Note 2626837 'isUnicode': Radio group contains an invalid value ". Valid values are: false|true](#) 📄

[SAP Note 2669183 ASCS installation failure with Software Provisioning Manager unattended mode \(Non-Observer mode\)](#) 📄

[SAP Note 2482103 Installation with Software Provisioning Manager in unattended mode using input parameter file fails](#) 📄

[SAP Note 2974889 Installation with Software Provisioning Manager in unattended mode fails in step getDBInfo due to missing parameters](#) 📄

### 9.2.5.3 How to Avoid Automatic Logoff by Software Provisioning Manager

When you install the SAP system, the installation tool checks whether the user account used for the installation has the required privileges and authorization.

For a local or domain installation, the account needs to be a member of the local `Administrators` group.

For domain installations the account can be either a member of the `Domain Admins` group, or belongs to the `Domain Users` group and has the necessary rights to create/modify objects in the domain.

For a list of the required permission, see [Performing a Domain Installation without being a Domain Administrator \[page 162\]](#)

In both cases, the user account must be authorized to do the following:

- Act as part of the operating system
- Adjust memory quotas for a process
- Replace a process level token

If the user account does not have these rights assigned, the software provisioning manager assigns them and automatically logs the account off to activate them. To avoid the software provisioning manager logging the account off, you can set these rights manually before you start the installation.

## Procedure

You perform the following steps to assign these rights to the user account used for the installation.

1. Press `Ctrl` + `Esc` and choose ► [Administrative Tools](#) ► [Local Security Policy](#) ►.
2. In the [Local Security Settings](#) window, choose ► [Local Policies](#) ► [User Rights Assignment](#) ►.
3. Double-click the required right under [Policy](#) and choose [Add User or Group](#).
4. In the [Select Users and Groups](#) window, choose the required user and choose [Add](#).  
The selected user appears in the box below.
5. Confirm your entry and then repeat the steps for each remaining policy that the user requires for the installation.
6. Log off and log on again to apply the changes.

## Related Information

[Required User Authorization for Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 70\]](#)

## 9.2.5.4 Restarting Interrupted Processing of Software Provisioning Manager

Here you find information about how to restart the software provisioning manager if its processing has been interrupted.

### Context

The processing of the software provisioning manager might be interrupted for one of the following reasons:

- An error occurred during the [Define Parameters](#) or [Execute](#) phase:  
The software provisioning manager does not abort the installation in error situations. If an error occurs, the installation pauses and a dialog box appears. The dialog box contains a short description of the choices listed in the table below as well as a path to a log file that contains detailed information about the error.
- You interrupted the processing of the software provisioning manager by choosing [Cancel](#) in the SL-UI.

#### ⚠ Caution

If you stop an option in the [Execute](#) phase, any system or component **installed** by this option is incomplete and not ready to be used. Any system or component **uninstalled** by this option is not completely uninstalled.

The following table describes the options in the dialog box:

Option	Definition
<a href="#">Retry</a>	<p>The software provisioning manager retries the installation from the point of failure without repeating any of the previous steps.</p> <p>This is possible because the software provisioning manager records its progress in the <code>keydb.xml</code> file.</p> <p>We recommend that you view the entries in the log files, try to solve the problem, and then choose <a href="#">Retry</a>.</p> <p>If the same or a different error occurs, the software provisioning manager displays the same dialog box again.</p>
<a href="#">Stop</a>	<p>The software provisioning manager stops the installation, closing the dialog box and the software provisioning manager's SL-UI.</p> <p>The software provisioning manager records its progress in the <code>keydb.xml</code> file. Therefore, you can continue with the software provisioning manager from the point of failure without repeating any of the previous steps. See the procedure below.</p>
<a href="#">Continue</a>	<p>The software provisioning manager continues the installation from the current point.</p>
<a href="#">View Log</a>	<p>Access installation log files.</p>

The following procedure describes the steps to restart an installation, which you stopped by choosing [Stop](#), or to continue an interrupted installation after an error situation.

## Procedure

1. Log on to the installation host as a user with the required permissions as described in [Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 95\]](#).
2. Make sure that the installation software is still available.

For more information, see [Preparing the Installation Software \[page 77\]](#).

### → Recommendation

Make the installation software available **locally**. For example, if you use remote file shares on other Windows hosts, CIFS shares on third-party SMB-servers, or Network File System (NFS), reading from software mounted with NFS might fail.

3. Make sure that the installation software are still available.

For more information, see [Preparing the Installation Software \[page 77\]](#).

### → Recommendation

Make the installation software available **locally**. For example, if you use remote file shares on other Windows hosts, CIFS shares on third-party SMB-servers, or Network File System (NFS), reading from software mounted with NFS might fail.

4. Restart the software provisioning manager by double-clicking **sapinst.exe** from the directory to which you unpacked the software provisioning manager archive.

By default, the SL-UI uses the default browser defined for the host where you run the software provisioning manager. However, you can also specify another supported web browser available on the host where you start the software provisioning manager. You can do this by starting the **sapinst** executable with command line option **SAPINST\_BROWSER=<Path to Browser Executable>**, for example **SAPINST\_BROWSER=firefox.exe**.

5. The software provisioning manager is restarting.

If you have a supported web browser (see [Prerequisites for Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 93\]](#)) installed on the host where you run the software provisioning manager, the SL-UI starts automatically by displaying the [Welcome](#) screen.

If the SL-UI does not open automatically, you can find the URL you require to access the SL-UI at the bottom of the [Program Starter](#) window of the software provisioning manager. You find the icon of the [Program Starter](#) window in the taskbar of your Windows host. Open a supported web browser and run the URL from there.

```
...
*****
Open your browser and paste the following URL address to access the GUI
https://[<hostname>]:4237/sapinst/docs/index.html
Logon users: [<users>]
*****
...
```

## i Note

If the host specified by `<hostname>` cannot be reached due to a special network configuration, proceed as follows:

1. Terminate the software provisioning manager as described in [Useful Information about Software Provisioning Manager \[page 99\]](#).
2. Restart the software provisioning manager from the command line with the `SAPINST_GUI_HOSTNAME=<hostname>` property.  
You can use a fully-qualified host name.

## ⚠ Caution

After opening the browser URL, make sure that the URL in the browser starts with "https://" to avoid security risks such as SSL stripping.

Before you reach the [Welcome](#) screen, your browser warns you that the certificate of the `sapinst` process on this computer could not be verified.

Proceed as follows to avoid security risks such as a man-in-the-middle attack:

1. Click on the certificate area on the left hand side in the address bar of your browser, and view the certificate.
2. Open the certificate fingerprint or thumbprint, and compare all hexadecimal numbers to the ones displayed in the console output of the software provisioning manager.

Proceed as follows to get the certificate fingerprint or thumbprint from the server certificate printed in the software provisioning manager console:

1. Go to the `sapinst_exe.xxxxxx.xxxx` directory in the temporary directory to which the software provisioning manager has extracted itself:  
`%userprofile%\sapinst\`
2. In the `sapinst_exe.xxxxxx.xxxx` directory, execute the `sapgenpse` tool with the command line option `get_my_name -p`.

As a result, you get the server fingerprint or thumbprint from the server certificate.

3. Accept the warning to inform your browser that it can trust this site, even if the certificate could not be verified.

The SL-UI opens in the browser by displaying the [Welcome](#) screen.

6. From the tree structure on the [Welcome](#) screen, select the installation option that you want to continue and choose [Next](#).

The [What do you want to do?](#) screen appears.

7. On the [What do you want to do?](#) screen, decide between the following alternatives and continue with [Next](#):

Alternative	Behavior
<i>Perform a new run</i>	<p>The software provisioning manager does not continue the interrupted installation option. Instead, it moves the content of the old software provisioning manager directory and all software provisioning manager-specific files to a backup directory. Afterwards, you can no longer continue the old option.</p> <p>The following naming convention is used for the backup directory:</p> <pre>log_&lt;Day&gt;_&lt;Month&gt;_&lt;Year&gt;_&lt;Hours&gt;_&lt;Minutes&gt;_&lt;Seconds&gt;</pre> <div> <p>❖ Example</p> <pre>log_01_Oct_2016_13_47_56</pre> </div> <div> <p>i Note</p> <p>All actions taken by the installation before you stopped it (such as creating directories or users) are not revoked.</p> </div> <div> <p>⚠ Caution</p> <p>The software provisioning manager moves all the files and folders to a new log directory, even if these files and folders are owned by other users. If there are any processes currently running on these files and folders, they might no longer function properly.</p> </div>
<i>Continue with the existing one</i>	<p>The software provisioning manager continues the interrupted installation from the point of failure.</p>

## 9.2.5.5 Entries in the Services File Created by Software Provisioning Manager

After the installation has finished successfully, the software provisioning manager has created the following entries for port names in `<Drive>:\WINDOWS\system32\drivers\etc\services`:

```
sapdp<Instance_Number> = 32<Instance_Number>/tcp
sapdp<Instance_Number>s = 47<Instance_Number>/tcp
sapgw<Instance_Number> = 33<Instance_Number>/tcp
sapgw<Instance_Number>s = 48<Instance_Number>/tcp
sapms<SAPSID> = 36<Instance_Number>/tcp (unless you specified another value during the installation)
```

### i Note

- There is a port created for every possible instance number, regardless of which instance number you specified during the installation. For example, for `sapgw<Instance_Number> = 33<Instance_Number>/tcp` the following range of entries is created:  
`sapgw00 = 3300/tcp`  
`sapgw01 = 3301/tcp`  
`sapgw02 = 3302/tcp`  
`[...]`  
`sapgw98 = 3398/tcp`  
`sapgw99 = 3399/tcp`
- If there is more than one entry for the same port number, this is **not** an error.

## 9.2.5.6 Troubleshooting with Software Provisioning Manager

This section tells you how to proceed when errors occur while the software provisioning manager is running.

### Context

If an error occurs, the software provisioning manager:

- Stops processing
- Displays a dialog informing you about the error

### Procedure


1. Check SAP Note [SAP Note 3207613](#) (SAPinst Framework 753 Central Note) for known software provisioning manager issues.
2. If an error occurs during the *Define Parameters* or the *Execute Service* phase, do one of the following:
  - Try to solve the problem:
    - To check the software provisioning manager log files (`sapinst.log` and `sapinst_dev.log`) for errors, choose the *LOG FILES* tab.

### i Note

The *LOG FILES* tab is only available if you have selected on the *Welcome* screen the relevant software provisioning manager option for the SAP product to be installed .

If you need to access the log files before you have done this selection, you can find the files in the `.sapinst` directory underneath the `<Drive>:\Users\<User>` directory, where `<User>` is the user that you used to start the software provisioning manager.

For more information, see [Useful Information about Software Provisioning Manager \[page 99\]](#).

- To check the log and trace files of the software provisioning manager's SL-UI for errors, go to the directory %userprofile%\sapinst\
    - Then continue by choosing [Retry](#).
  - If required, abort the software provisioning manager by choosing [Cancel](#) in the tool menu and restart the software provisioning manager. For more information, see [Restarting Interrupted Processing of Software Provisioning Manager \[page 107\]](#).
3. If you cannot resolve the problem, report an incident using the appropriate subcomponent of BC-INS\*.
- For more information about using subcomponents of BC-INS\*, see SAP Note [1669327](#) .

## 9.2.5.7 Using the Step State Editor (SAP Support Experts Only)

This section describes how to use the `Step State Editor` available in the software provisioning manager.

### Note

Only use the `Step State Editor` if the SAP Support requests you to do so, for example to resolve a customer incident.

## Prerequisites

- SAP Support requests you to use the `Step State Editor`.
- Make sure that the host where you run the software provisioning manager meets the requirements listed in [Prerequisites for Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 93\]](#).

## Procedure

1. Start the software provisioning manager from the command line as described in [Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 95\]](#) with the additional command line parameter `SAPINST_SET_STEPSTATE=true`
2. Follow the instructions on the software provisioning manager screens and fill in the parameters prompted during the [Define Parameters](#) phase until you reach the [Parameter Summary](#) screen.
3. Choose [Next](#).

The `Step State Editor` opens as an additional dialog. Within this dialog you see a list of all steps to be executed by the software provisioning manager during the [Execute Service](#) phase. By default all steps are in an initial state. Underneath each step, you see the assigned software provisioning manager component. For each step you have a [Skip](#) and a [Break](#) option.



- Mark the checkbox in front of the *Break* option of the steps where you want the software provisioning manager to pause.
  - Mark the checkbox in front of the *Skip* option of the steps which you want the software provisioning manager to skip.
4. After you have marked all required steps with either the *Break* or the *Skip* option, choose *OK* on the *Step State Editor* dialog.

The software provisioning manager starts processing the *Execute Service* phase and pauses one after another when reaching each step whose *Break* option you have marked. You can now choose one of the following:

- Choose *OK* to continue with this step.
  - Choose *Step State Editor* to return to the *Step State Editor* and make changes, for example you can repeat the step by marking the checkbox in front of the *Repeat* option.
  - Choose *Cancel* to abort the software provisioning manager.
5. Continue until you have run through all the steps of the *Execute Service* phase of the software provisioning manager.

## 9.3 Copying Single Instances Only

If you want to copy single instances of your SAP system only, you can use one of the following procedures, depending on your use case.

### ⚠ Caution

You **cannot** copy single product instances, usage types, or components!

### 9.3.1 Copying the Primary Application Server Instance Only

With this procedure, you can move a primary application server instance to a different host within your system.


#### Prerequisites

The ABAP central services instance (ASCS instance) is installed.

#### Procedure

1. Shut down all application servers.

2. Uninstall the old primary application server instance as described in [Uninstalling an SAP System or Single Instances \[page 174\]](#) .
3. On your **target** host, start the software provisioning manager as described in [Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 95\]](#).
4. On the *Welcome* screen, navigate to the following folder according to the requirements of your target system:
 


5. After the installation has finished, restart all additional application server including the instance services.

## 9.3.2 Copying the Database Only – Refresh Database Content

Using the [Refresh Database Content](#) option in the software provisioning manager you can refresh the **content** of an existing database **using a database backup**. You do **not** have to copy the primary application server instance and to reinstall additional applications servers.

### Note

System copy option [Refresh Database Content](#) is currently **not** released for SAP SCM.

## Prerequisites

- The source system and the target system already exist.
- As a post-step during the refresh database content, the software provisioning manager connects to the target SAP system via remote function call (RFC). Since the certificates are from the source system, make sure that secure network communications (SNC) is turned off for the RFC, or at least that the insecure RFC connection is allowed. This is only necessary during the short time of the post-processing steps, and after they are completed, you can turn SNC back on.

### Caution

Use Software Provisioning Manager de-clustering only when you perform a system copy of the entire system. The source system must be de-clustered / de-pooled.

## Context

You must choose the same schema name for the target system as the schema name of the export or database backup. However, you can choose a different instance number.

We recommend that you use option [Refresh Database Content](#) if you need to equalize the database content of two or more already existing and configured systems, for example in automatized system landscapes with

“template” systems which have to correspond to precisely defined standards, such as predefined host names, network settings, users, security policies.

## Procedure

1. Perform a database backup as described in the *SAP HANA Administration Guide* at [http://help.sap.com/hana\\_platform](http://help.sap.com/hana_platform) ►► *System Administration* ►.

Make sure that the database backup is accessible from the database host.

2. On the SAP system host, stop all SAP application server instances, but leave the ASCS instance running.
3. On the application server instance host, run the software provisioning manager and choose ►► *Generic Options* ► *SAP HANA Database* ► *Refresh Database Content* ►.

Follow the instructions on the software provisioning manager screens. You are prompted for the following:

- The <DBSID> of the target system.
- The profile directory of your SAP system.
- The location of the database backup.
- The database administrator password for the backup.  
this is the SYSTEM user's password of the SAP HANA database where the database backup has been created.

Since with the software provisioning manager 2.0 an import can only be done with a backup of the SAP HANA source database, Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 prompts for the original password of the SYSTEM user.

# 10 Follow-Up Activities

This post-installation checklist guides you through the required post-installation steps for the target system:

## Related Information

[Performing Follow-Up Activities in the Source System \[page 116\]](#)

[Performing Follow-Up Activities in the Target System \[page 116\]](#)

## 10.1 Performing Follow-Up Activities in the Source System

This section describes the follow-up steps that you have to perform in the source system after the target system installation has completed.

### Procedure

1. Reschedule released jobs.

If you stopped scheduling of released jobs and of jobs that must run periodically before you started the system copy procedure, release them again by running report BTCTRNS2. For more information, see [General Technical Preparations for the System Copy \[page 63\]](#).

2. Using CCMS, adapt your operation mode timetable to the original status (transaction SM37).

## 10.2 Performing Follow-Up Activities in the Target System

[Post-Installation Checklist \[page 116\]](#)

### 10.2.1 Post-Installation Checklist

This section includes the post-installation steps that you have to perform for the following:

- Standard, distributed, or high-availability system

- Additional application server instance

More detailed information about the steps are available in the linked sections.

### i Note

We highly recommend that you apply the latest Support Package as described in [Applying the Latest Kernel \[page 136\]](#). The minimum requirement for running SAP BW on the SAP HANA database is SP4.

## Standard, Distributed, or High-Availability System

### i Note

In a standard system, all mandatory instances except the database instance are installed on one host. Therefore, if you are installing a standard system, you can ignore references to other hosts.

The SAP HANA database is normally pre-installed by SAP partners before you start the installation. During the SAP system installation, the database instance was remotely installed by the software provisioning manager from the primary application server host.

1. You check whether you can [log on to the Application Server ABAP \[page 118\]](#).
2. You [perform follow-up activities for the ABAP system \[page 119\]](#).
3. If you have not enabled SAP EarlyWatch Alert in your SAP Solution Manager, you [enable SAP EarlyWatch Alert for ABAP Systems on SAP HANA \[page 125\]](#).
4. You [configure the remote connection to SAP support \[page 129\]](#).
5. You [enable the Note Assistant to apply note corrections \[page 129\]](#).
6. You [perform the consistency check \[page 129\]](#).
7. If required, you [set up symbolic links for application servers \[page 131\]](#).
8. You [configure the Transport Management System \[page 132\]](#).
9. For production systems it is highly recommended that you [connect the system to SAP Solution Manager \[page 134\]](#).
10. Run software provisioning manager option *Check and Adjust ABAP System* to apply necessary configuration steps.
11. You [apply the latest kernel and Support Packages \[page 136\]](#).
12. If required, you [install additional languages and perform language transport \[page 137\]](#).
13. You [configure the user management \[page 138\]](#).

### i Note

This section does not apply for SAP Process Integration 7.5 and SAP Solution Manager, because for them the user management with an external ABAP system is mandatory. For SAP Process Integration 7.5 and SAP Solution Manager you have to perform special configuration steps which are described in the guide you have to use for the installation of the Java stack..

14. You [ensure user security \[page 139\]](#).
15. You [perform the client copy \[page 141\]](#).
16. You [install or upgrade SAP HANA studio \[page 142\]](#).
17. You perform [Follow-Up Activities for the SAP HANA Database \[page 142\]](#).

18. If required, you [change the keys for the secure storage \[page 145\]](#).
19. You [perform a full system backup \[page 146\]](#).
20. If you chose to install an embedded SAP Web Dispatcher within the ASCS instance, you [log on to the SAP Web Dispatcher Management Console \[page 146\]](#)
21. If you chose to install an embedded SAP Web Dispatcher within the ASCS instance, you [configure the SAP Web Dispatcher \[page 148\]](#)
22. If you chose to install an embedded Gateway within the ASCS instance, you [configure the SAP Gateway \[page 148\]](#).
23. You check section *Installation Follow-Up Activities* in the release-specific “[Installation Guide](#)” - also called “[Master Guide](#)” for SAP BW/4HANA - [\[page 29\]](#) for additional implementation and configuration steps.

## Additional Application Server Instance

1. You check whether you can [log on to the Application Server ABAP \[page 118\]](#).
2. You [ensure user security \[page 139\]](#).
3. If required, you [set up symbolic links for application servers \[page 131\]](#).
4. You [perform a full system backup \[page 146\]](#).

## 10.2.2 Logging On to the Application Server ABAP


You need to check that you can log on to the Application Server ABAP with the standard users, given in the table below.

### Prerequisites

- The SAP system is up and running.
- You have installed the SAP front-end software.

### Context

#### i Note

Client 066 is no longer available in newly installed SAP systems based on SAP NetWeaver 7.5 or higher. For more information, see SAP Note [1749142](#) .

#### i Note

Client 001 is no longer available in newly installed SAP systems based on SAP S/4HANA and SAP BW/4HANA.

User	User Name	Client
SAP system user	SAP*	000, 001, 066
	DDIC	000, 001

You access the application server ABAP using [SAP Logon](#).

## Procedure

1. Start [SAP Logon](#) on the host where you have installed the SAP front-end software as follows:

- SAP GUI for **Windows**:
  1. Press **Windows** + **Q**, and enter [SAP Logon](#) in the [Search](#) field.
  2. Choose [SAP Logon](#).
- SAP GUI for **Java**:
  1. Press **Windows** + **Q**, and enter [SAP GUI for Java <Release>](#)
  2. Choose [SAP GUI for Java <Release>](#).

The [SAP Logon](#) appears.

### Note

You can alternatively enter the command **guilogon** in the SAP GUI installation directory to start SAP GUI for Java.

2. Create a logon entry for the newly installed system in the [SAP Logon](#).  
For more information about creating new logon entries, press **F1**.
3. When you have created the entry, log on as user SAP\* or DDIC.

## 10.2.3 Performing Follow-Up Activities for ABAP

### Related Information

[Activities at Operating System Level \[page 120\]](#)

[Activities at Database Level \[page 120\]](#)

[Activities at SAP System Level \[page 121\]](#)

[Checking the Target System \[page 125\]](#)

## 10.2.3.1 Activities at Operating System Level

This section includes the adaptations that you have to make at operating system level in your target system.

### Procedure

1. Adapt the configuration files at operating system level to meet network and SAP requirements.
2. Adapt additional SAP software components (for example, RFC, CPIC, SAP ArchiveLink) if required.
3. Adapt additional non-SAP software components (for example, archiving systems, monitoring tools, job schedulers) if required.
4. Adapt backup programs (for example, BRBACKUP, BRARCHIVE, BACKINT) if required.
5. Adapt non-SAP directories, file systems, NFS mounts, and so on, if required.
6. Check the SAP parameters of the default and instance profiles.
7. Check operating system files (for example, `_netrc`, `Rhosts`).
8. Check operating system printers.
9. If the spool requests are stored at file system level, you must copy the subdirectories with the spool files to the new global directory. For more information, see SAP Note [20176](#).

## 10.2.3.2 Activities at Database Level

This section includes the adaptations that you have to make at database level in your target system.

### Procedure

1. Before starting the SAP system, make sure that the logging mechanism of the database is active.
2. Check the parameters in the database profiles.
3. Delete all entries from the following tables: `ALCONSEG`, `ALSYSTEMS`, `DBSNP`, `MONI`, `OSMON`, `PAHI`, `SDBAD`, `SDBAP`, `SDBAR`.
4. Delete entries in the table `DDLOG` for buffer synchronization.
5. **MS SQL Server only:** Clean up the `DB13` job-related tables and `msdb` jobs as described in SAP Note [1817705](#).



## 10.2.3.3 Activities at SAP System Level

This section includes the adaptations that you have to make at SAP system level in your target system.

### Note

You can use ABAP post-copy automation (PCA) to automatically perform follow-up activities at system level. ABAP post-copy automation (PCA) provides task lists with a predefined sequence of configuration tasks to configure extensive technical scenarios automatically. For more information, see SAP Note [1614266](#).

To be able to use PCA, you must install the license for SAP Landscape Virtualization Management Enterprise Edition. For more information, see SAP Note [1912110](#).

## Procedure

1. If you performed a Unicode conversion using as target system ID the same **<SAPSID>** as the source system ID and the (local or NFS-mounted) operating system users of the target system still have the environment of the operating system users of the source system, you need to update the user environment for the operating system users of the target system as follows:

Update the **PATH** variable so that it points to the platform-specific directory for Unicode.

### Example

Update the **PATH** value **<Drive>:\usr\sap\<SAPSID>\SYS\exe\nuc\ntx86\_64** to  
**<Drive>:\usr\sap\<SAPSID>\SYS\exe\uc\ntx86\_64**

2. Run an installation check (transaction **SM28**).
3. Delete all entries from the tables **TPFET** and **TPFHT** (transaction **SE14**).  
These tables contain information about changes made to the profile of your source system.
4. Import the system profiles into the database (transaction **RZ10**).
5. If you changed the SAP system ID during the system copy, delete all entries from table **TLOCK**, which holds the repair requests from your source system.
6. Maintain the operation modes.
  - a. Create new operation modes and instance definitions (transaction **RZ04**).
  - b. Maintain the time table using the new operation modes (transaction **SM63**).
  - c. Delete the old operation modes and old instance definitions.
7. Adapt other CCMS settings (for example, alert thresholds, reorganization parameters of CCMS table **MONI**) if required.
8. Check the logon groups and the assignment of the application servers to the logon groups (transaction **SMLG**).  
If required, create new logon groups and assign the new application servers to these logon groups.
9. Define or remove the SAP system users and revise the authorizations of the system users: **Tools** **Administration** **User maintenance** **Users** (transaction **SU01**).

10. Synchronize the buffers as described in SAP Note [36283](#) and adapt the client information for the logical system.
11. Configure the spool server.
  - a. Adapt the definition of the printers to meet the new system requirements (transaction SPAD):
    - Device types and character set definitions
    - Spool server
    - Output management systems (OMS)
  - b. Delete obsolete spool requests and spool inconsistencies while executing the ABAP program RSP00041 (transaction SE38).
  - c. Call transaction SP12 and run report RSP01043 for a spool data consistency check.  
For more information, see SAP Notes [98065](#) and [48400](#).
12. Configure batch jobs.
  - a. Delete canceled and finished batch jobs while executing the RSBTCDEL ABAP program, selecting *Delete with forced mode* (transaction SE38).
  - b. Adapt all jobs needed in the target system.
13. If you have used the DBA Calendar in the source system, redefine database actions (backup, update statistics, and so on) (transaction DB13).
14. Maintain the security configuration.
  - a. Call transaction STRUST.
  - b. Replace all existing PSE files in the target system with new ones, which contain the new system's information.  
For more information, see the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at [Security > System Security > System Security for SAP NetWeaver AS ABAP Only > Trust Manager > Creating PSEs and Maintaining the PSE Infrastructure > Creating or Replacing a PSE](#).
15. Adapt RFC server groups.  
Call transaction RZ12 and change the instance name of RFC server groups under *Group assignment*.
16. Adapt RFC destinations copied from the source system to the target system.

### Caution

Before you delete RFC destinations, make sure that they are not needed in the target system.

- a. To check and adapt qRFC destination, call transaction SMQR.
  - b. To check and adapt tRFC destination, call transaction SM58.
  - c. To delete obsolete RFC destinations, call transaction SM59.
17. [Check the ABAP Secure Store \[page 124\]](#)
18. Configure the Transport Management System (TMS).
  - a. Reschedule the transport dispatcher (RDDIMPDP) in client 000:
    1. Log on as user DDIC.
    2. Call transaction **SE38**.
    3. Run program RDDNEWPP and set the priority to high.
  - b. Adapt the transport parameters and transport routes in the TMS as follows:
    1. Call transaction **STMS**.

2. To adapt the transport parameters, choose ► [Overview](#) ► [Systems](#) ► [<your system>](#) ► [Transport Tool](#) .
3. To adapt the transport routes, choose ► [Overview](#) ► [Transport Routes](#) .
4. Configure the domain controller in the Transport Management System (TMS) by using transaction STMS.

### Note

If you did not change the SAP system ID during the system copy, all open transport, repair, and customizing requests that have not been released in the source system will not be released automatically.

19. Make data archived in the source system (data that does not reside in the database but was moved to a different storage location using SAP Archive Management) accessible in the target system. Adapt the file residence information in the target system. For more information, see and the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at ► [Solution Life Cycle Management](#) ► [Data Archiving](#) .
20. Check self-defined external commands (transaction SM69).
21. Check the logical system names. If you need to change logical system names in the system that results from the system rename, change the logical system names at this time, as described in SAP Notes [103228](#) and [544509](#) . Follow your corporate naming strategy for logical systems when making this change.

To identify potential follow-up activities regarding logical system names, answer to the following question:

Does the renamed SAP system use logical system names?

- If not, this aspect is not relevant for your use case.
- If yes, answer to the following question:  
What naming convention was used for the logical system names?  
The default convention is `<SAPSID>CLNT<Client_Number>`, but it might have been adapted individually. If your logical system names contain attributes that were renamed as part of this procedure, see SAP Note [121163](#) for information about how to convert logical system names.

If you have renamed an SAP BW system, see SAP Note [886102](#) .

22. For every client in your SAP system check the detail settings (client role, changes and transports for client-dependent objects, changes for client-independent objects, protection level, restrictions) (transaction SCC4).
23. Check if you can delete clients that are no longer used in the target system (transaction SCC5).
24. Check the contexts and segments of remote application servers for the SAP Monitoring Infrastructure if required (transaction RZ21).
25. Post-processing for customer objects:
  - If customer objects are not original in the new system, use transaction SE06 to modify the corresponding entries in table TADIR.
  - If you encounter problems modifying a customer development class using transaction STMS or SM31, try using the option [Validate](#) (ENTER) instead of the option [Save](#) to save your changes.
26. **BW only:** Start program RS\_BW\_POST\_MIGRATION in the background. Program RS\_BW\_POST\_MIGRATION performs necessary modifications on database-specific objects (mainly BW objects).

If you changed the database management system (for example, IBM i to MaxDB) when copying the system, you have to start program RS\_BW\_POST\_MIGRATION in the background with variant SAP&POSTMGRDB

#### **i Note**

If you changed the database management system to SAP HANA database, use variant SAP&POSTMGRHDB

#### 27. Generate the ABAP load.

The ABAP loads are platform-dependent programs that are generated during runtime and stored in database tables. They are not exported when you use the R3load procedure to copy your SAP system. The ABAP loads are generated in the target system when they are first used.

#### **i Note**

Make sure that you have sufficient space available on your database. The generation of all existing objects requires about 2 to 9 GB of free space.

For a detailed description about how to generate the ABAP load, call transaction SGEN and choose [Information about the SAP Load Generator](#).

## Related Information

[Checking the ABAP Secure Store \[page 124\]](#)

### 10.2.3.3.1 Checking the ABAP Secure Store

#### Procedure

1. Start transaction SECSTORE.
2. Choose [Check Entries](#) and [Execute](#).
3. Filter the result by error messages.
  - If you see at least one error message of type [SECSTORE 089](#) ("[Key ... for entry ... is missing in the secure storage in the file system](#)"), proceed as follows:
    1. Reimport encryption keys that were used in the source system and stored in the secure storage in the file system  
You can find information about this process in the [Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:  
[► Function-Oriented View](#) ► [Security](#) ► [System Security](#) ► [System Security for SAP NetWeaver AS ABAP Only](#) ► [Secure Storage \(ABAP\)](#) ► [Key Management](#) ► [Using Individual Encryption Keys](#) ► [Importing Missing Encryption Keys](#) ►
    2. Repeat the check.
  - If you see at least one error message of type [SECSTORE 030](#) ("[Incorrect global key for entry ...](#)"), you need to restore a legacy key-file that was used in the source system.

You can find information about this process in the [Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:

► [Function-Oriented View](#) ► [Security](#) ► [System Security](#) ► [System Security for SAP NetWeaver AS ABAP Only](#) ► [Secure Storage \(ABAP\)](#) ► [Key Management](#) ► [Legacy Method for Using Individual Encryption Key](#) ► [Importing Keys after a System Copy](#) ►


- If you see at least one error message of type *SECSTORE 031* (“System-dependent data for entry ... changed: ...”), you must perform a record migration.

You can find information about this process in **SAP Note 816861** .

## 10.2.3.4 Checking the Target System

The following actions are required for checking the consistency of the target system.

### Procedure

1. Perform an initial consistency check (transaction SM28).
2. Check the system log on **all** application servers (transaction SM21). In case of warnings, see **SAP Note 43434** .
3. Check the consistency of the database (transaction DB02).
4. Perform a server check (transaction SM51).
5. FI customers: Run the job *SAPF190* (accounting reconciliation) and compare the results to those gained on the source system before the system copy (► [Accounting](#) ► [Financial Accounting](#) ► [General ledger](#) ► [Periodic Processing](#) ► [Closing](#) ► [Check/count](#) ► [Comparison](#) ►).
6. FI customers: Run the jobs *RFUMSV00* (tax on sales/purchases), *RAGITT01* (asset history sheet), *RAZUGA01* (asset acquisitions), and *RAABGA01* (fixed asset retirements) and compare the results to those gained on the source system before the system copy.
7. CO customers: Run the report group *1SIP* and compare the results to those gained on the source system before the system copy.

## 10.2.4 Enabling SAP EarlyWatch Alert for ABAP Systems on SAP HANA

### Context

After the installation of any new SAP ABAP system running on SAP HANA, you have to enable the SAP EarlyWatch Alert (EWA) and send corresponding data to SAP – either by using SAP Solution Manager for SAP EarlyWatch Alert or by performing the automated configuration described below.

The SAP EarlyWatch Alert identifies potential problems early, avoids bottlenecks, and monitors the performance of your ABAP and Java systems and your most important business processes regularly, automatically, and effectively. For more information, see <http://support.sap.com/ewa>.

If you have not enabled SAP EarlyWatch Alert in your SAP Solution Manager (for more information, see SAP Note [1257308](#)), we provide an automated procedure using our automation framework ABAP Task Manager, which is already part of the ABAP system. The automation task list "Early Watch Alert to SAP Configuration" sets up a periodical EWA data collection and transfers this data to SAP in Service Data Control Center (SDCCN), when executed by the ABAP Task Manager.

The task list comprises the following detailed tasks:

1. Configuration of SAPOSS Connection (OSS1)  
Creates standard RFC SAPOSS if it does not yet exist.
2. SDCC\_OSS Connection  
Creates an RFC SDCC\_OSS by copying RFC SAPOSS and adds this RFC to the SDCCN RFC list if it does not yet exist. This RFC is used in SDCCN to communicate with the SAP backend.
3. SDCCN Activation  
Activates the SDCCN in the system if not yet activated. An hourly job /BDL/TASK\_PROCESSOR is scheduled after the activation.
4. SDCCN Refresh Service Definition  
Gets the newest Service Definitions from SAP. The Service Definitions define the data to be collected for the EWA session.
5. SDCCN Schedule EWA to SAP  
Schedules a weekly EWA session (with session number 000Z\*) in SDCCN, if no session exists.

## Procedure

1. Download the archive `SAPK-74005INSTPI` or higher at:  
<http://support.sap.com/installations> ► *Software Downloads* ► *Support Packages and Patches* ► *By Alphabetical Index (A-Z)* ► *S* ► *ST-PI* ► *ST-PI 740* ► *SUPPORT PACKAGES*.
2. Apply the downloaded ST-PI archive via SPAM/SAINT.  
For more information, see <http://help.sap.com/spmanager>.
3. Start the ABAP Task Manager by calling transaction STC01.
4. Choose the task list /BDL/SDCCN\_EWA\_CONFIG.
5. Choose *Execute*.  
You are guided through the configuration steps.

## 10.2.5 Installing the SAP License

You must install a **permanent** SAP license. When you install your SAP system, a **temporary** license is automatically installed.

## Context

### ⚠ Caution

**Before** the temporary license expires, you must apply for a permanent license key from SAP.

We recommend that you apply for a permanent license key as soon as possible after installing your system.

### i Note

The license key is bound to the hardware key of the host where the message server is running.

#### High Availability only:

In a high-availability system with Microsoft Failover Clustering, the message server is part of the ASCS instance that can run on a different cluster node. Therefore you must install the SAP license on both nodes.

You have to do failover from the first cluster node where the ASCS instance is installed to the second cluster node. Use the hardware key of the second cluster node for the installation of the second SAP license.

For more information about SAP license keys and how to obtain them, see <http://support.sap.com/licensekey>.

## Procedure

Install the SAP license as described in the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:

Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA ("ABAP Platform 1809" for short) <b>and higher</b>	► <a href="#">Adminstrating the ABAP Platform</a> ► <a href="#">Administration Concepts and Tools</a> ► <a href="#">Solution Life Cycle Management</a> ► <a href="#">SAP Licenses</a> ►
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0	► <a href="#">Adminstrating the ABAP Platform</a> ► <a href="#">Administration Concepts and Tools</a> ► <a href="#">Solution Life Cycle Management</a> ► <a href="#">SAP Licenses</a> ►
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (<SP08 or higher>)	► <a href="#">Solution Life Cycle Management</a> ► <a href="#">SAP Licenses</a> ►

## 10.2.6 High Availability: Setting Up Licenses

You need to install a **permanent** license, which is determined by the hardware environment of the message server.

### Prerequisites

The SAP system is up and running.

### Context

SAP has implemented a license mechanism for switchover solutions and clustered environments. Your customer key is calculated on the basis of local information on the message server host. This is the host machine where the ABAP central services instance (ASCS instance) runs.


To be able to perform a switchover, the **temporary** license that is installed automatically with the ASCS instance is not sufficient. You first need to install a **permanent** license, which is determined by the hardware environment of the message server. Since SAP's high-availability (HA) solution stipulates two or more cluster nodes (host machines) where the message server is enabled to run, you have to order as many [license keys \[page 126\]](#) as you have cluster nodes.

When we receive confirmation from your vendor that you are implementing a switchover environment, we provide the required license keys for your system, one key for each machine.

### Procedure

1. To find the hardware ID of the primary host, log on to any application server instance of the SAP system and call transaction `SLICENSE`.
2. Perform a switchover of the ABAP central services instance (ASCS) to another node in the cluster and repeat the previous step.

Repeat this for all remaining nodes in the cluster.

3. To obtain the two license keys, enter the hardware IDs for each cluster node, where message server is enabled to run: <http://support.sap.com/licensekey> 
4. To import the files containing the two licenses, log on to any application server instance of the SAP system and call transaction `SLICENSE`.
5. Perform a switchover of the ABAP central services instance (ASCS) to another node in the cluster and repeat the previous step.

Repeat this for all remaining nodes in the cluster.



## Results

The license is no longer a problem during switchover. This means you do **not** need to call `saplicense` in your switchover scripts.

## 10.2.7 Configuring the Remote Connection to SAP Support

SAP offers its customers access to support and a number of remote services such as the `Early Watch Service` or the `GoingLive Service`. Therefore, you have to set up a remote network connection to SAP.

For more information, see SAP Support Portal at <https://support.sap.com/remote-support.html>.

## 10.2.8 Enabling Note Assistant to Apply Note Corrections

Use the Note Assistant to implement note corrections in your ABAP system.

### Context

The Note Assistant allows you to automatically implement note corrections in your ABAP system. For more information about the Note Assistant, see <https://support.sap.com/noteassistant> and <https://help.sap.com/netweaver> ►► *SAP NetWeaver Platform* ► *<Release>* ► *Application Help* ► *SAP NetWeaver Library: Function-Oriented View* ► *Solution Life Cycle Management* ► *Software Logistics* ► *Note Assistant* ►.

### Procedure

1. Follow the instructions in SAP Note [2836302](#) for enabling the Note Assistant for TCI and digitally signed SAP Notes.
2. Apply important SAP Notes for SAP\_BASIS as described in SAP Note [1668882](#).

## 10.2.9 Performing the Consistency Check

We recommend that you check the consistency of the newly installed SAP ABAP system.

## Prerequisites

- If the installation finished successfully, your SAP system should be up and running. Otherwise, start it as described in [Starting and Stopping the SAP System \[page 167\]](#).
- You have [logged on to the SAP system \[page 118\]](#).

## Context

When logging on to the system for the first time, you need to trigger a consistency check manually. The function is then called automatically whenever you start the system or an application server.

The following checks are performed:

- Completeness of installation
- Version compatibility between the SAP release and the operating system  
The initial consistency check determines whether:
  - The release number in the SAP kernel matches the release number defined in the database system
  - The character set specified in the SAP kernel matches the character set specified in the database system
  - Critical structure definitions that are defined in both the data dictionary and the SAP kernel are identical. The structures checked by this function include SYST, T100, TSTC, TDCT and TFDIR.
- Accessibility of the message server
- Availability of all work process types
- Information about the standalone enqueue server and the update service

## Procedure

1. Perform a system check:

Call transaction SICK.

You should see the entry `SAP System Check | no errors reported`

2. Perform a database check:

In the DBA Cockpit (transaction DBACOCKPIT), check for missing tables or indexes by choosing

► [Diagnostics](#) ► [Missing Tables and Indexes](#) ►.

## 10.2.10 Creating Symbolic Links on Windows Server for Application Servers

### Use

On Windows Server you can create symbolic links for additional application server instances to simplify their administration.

Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

In a high-availability system, you can additionally create symbolic links for the primary application server instance.

End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

Symbolic links for application servers let you access from your local host the `sys` directory that is located on the global host, without having to specify its UNC path. Instead you can browse, for example, in the Windows explorer on your local host to the `sys` directory and its subdirectories on the global host.

### Procedure

To create symbolic links, perform the following steps:

1. Open a PowerShell command in elevated mode, and enter the following PowerShell command in a single line:

```
cmd /c mklink /d <localdisk>:\usr\sap<SAPSID>\SYS \
\<sapglobalhost>\sapmnt\<SAPSID>\SYS
```

#### i Note

Enter a blank before `\\<sapglobalhost>\...`

2. If you use a central transport directory, you can also create the following link in PowerShell:

```
cmd /c mklink /d <localdisk>:\usr\sap\trans \\<trans_dir_host>\sapmnt\trans
```

#### i Note

The transport directory host `<trans_dir_host>` and the `<sapglobalhost>` can be identical.

#### ⚠ Caution

The command `mklink` creates the link without checking whether the link target exists or is accessible. If the link does not work after you created it, make sure that it exists and check the accessibility of the UNC path.

## 10.2.11 Configuring the Change and Transport System

You have to perform some steps in the Transport Management System to be able to use the Change and Transport System (TMS).

### i Note

SAP\_BASIS\_SETUP\_INITIAL\_CONFIG only covers the configuration of TMS as single system.

## Context

## Procedure

1. Call transaction `STMS` in the ABAP system to configure the domain controller in the Transport Management System (TMS).

For more information, see the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:


Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA ("ABAP Platform 1809" for short) <b>and higher</b>	<a href="#">Application Server ABAP Infrastructure</a> <a href="#">Administration of Application Server ABAP</a> <a href="#">Administration Concepts and Tools</a> <a href="#">Solution Life Cycle Management</a> <a href="#">Software Logistics</a> <a href="#">Change and Transport System</a> <a href="#">Change and Transport System – Overview</a> <a href="#">Basics of the Change and Transport System</a> <a href="#">Transport Management System – Concept</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0	<a href="#">Application Server ABAP Infrastructure</a> <a href="#">Administration of Application Server ABAP</a> <a href="#">Administration Concepts and Tools</a> <a href="#">Solution Life Cycle Management</a> <a href="#">Software Logistics</a> <a href="#">Change and Transport System</a> <a href="#">Change and Transport System – Overview</a> <a href="#">Basics of the Change and Transport System</a> <a href="#">Transport Management System – Concept</a>

Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (<SP08 or higher>)	► Application Server ► Application Server ABAP ► Administration of Application Server ABAP ► Change and Transport System ► Change and Transport System – Overview ► Basics of the Change and Transport System ► Transport Management System – Concept ►

2. In addition, you must configure the system change options.

For more information, see the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:

Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA ("ABAP Platform 1809" for short) <b>and higher</b>	► Application Server ABAP Infrastructure ► Administration of Application Server ABAP ► Administration Concepts and Tools ► Solution Life Cycle Management ► Software Logistics ► Change and Transport System ► Transport Organizer (BC-CTS-ORG) ► Requirements for Working with the Transport Organizer ► Setting the System Change Option ►
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0	► Application Server ABAP Infrastructure ► Administration of Application Server ABAP ► Administration Concepts and Tools ► Solution Life Cycle Management ► Software Logistics ► Change and Transport System ► Transport Organizer (BC-CTS-ORG) ► Requirements for Working with the Transport Organizer ► Setting the System Change Option ►
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (<SP08 or higher>)	► Solution Life Cycle Management ► Software Logistics ► Change and Transport System ► Transport Organizer (BC-CTS-ORG) ► Requirements for Working with the Transport Organizer ► Setting the System Change Option ►

3. Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)  
 In a high-availability system with Microsoft Failover Clustering, you must configure **all** systems in the TMS landscape. To do this, implement SAP Note [943334](#) .  
End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)
4. Call transaction **SE38** to schedule a dispatcher job for transport programs by executing report **RDDIMPDP**. You schedule the transport dispatcher in the current client. This is equivalent to the execution of job **RDDNEWPP** in transaction **SE38**

## 10.2.12 Connecting the System to SAP Solution Manager

Here you find information about how to connect your newly installed SAP system to the SAP Solution Manager in your system landscape.

### Note

You can skip this section if your newly installed SAP system is itself a SAP Solution Manager system.

## Prerequisites

An SAP Solution Manager system must be available in your system landscape. For more information, see <http://help.sap.com/solutionmanager>.

## Context

SAP Solution Manager gives you central access to tools, methods, and preconfigured content that you can use to evaluate and implement your solutions.

When your implementation is running, you can use SAP Solution Manager to manage, monitor, and update systems and business processes in your solution landscape, and also to set up and operate your own solution support.

## Procedure

You connect a technical system to SAP Solution Manager by the following steps:

1. On the technical systems of your landscape, **data suppliers** are implemented, for example, with transaction RZ70 for Application Server ABAP and with Visual Administrator for Application Server Java.

For more information, see the SAP Solution Manager Application Help:

- If your SAP Solution Manager release is 7.2:  
<http://help.sap.com/solutionmanager> > Version 7.2 SPS <No> > Application Help (English)  
> Technical Infrastructures > Landscape Management Database (LMDB) > Setting Up the Landscape Management Infrastructure > Importing Landscape Data, CIM Model, and CR Content >
  - If your SAP Solution Manager release is 7.1:  
<http://help.sap.com/solutionmanager> > Version 7.1 SPS <No> > Application Help (English)  
> SAP Solution Manager Operations > Managing System Landscape Information > Managing Technical System Information > Register Technical Systems Automatically by Data Suppliers >
2. The data suppliers send information about the hardware and installed software to a central **System Landscape Directory (SLD)**. Updates are sent to the SLD as well. Alternatively, systems can send information directly to the LMDB in SAP Solution Manager, without an SLD, as described in <http://>

[help.sap.com/solutionmanager](http://help.sap.com/solutionmanager) > Version 7.2 SPS <No> > Application Help (English) > Technical Infrastructures > Landscape Management Database (LMDB) > Setting Up the Landscape Management Infrastructure > Importing Landscape Data, CIM Model, and CR Content > .

For more information, see *Handling Technical Systems' Data - System Landscape Directory* at <https://support.sap.com/en/tools/software-logistics-tools/landscape-management-process/system-landscape-directory.html>.

3. From the SLD, this information is regularly synchronized with **SAP Solution Manager** where it is managed in the Landscape Management Database (LMDB).

For more information, see the SAP Solution Manager Application Help:

- If your SAP Solution Manager release is 7.2:  
<http://help.sap.com/solutionmanager> > Version 7.2 SPS <No> > Application Help (English) > Technical Infrastructures > Landscape Management Database (LMDB) > Setting Up the Landscape Management Infrastructure > Importing Landscape Data, CIM Model, and CR Content > Synchronization with an SLD > .
- If your SAP Solution Manager release is 7.1:  
<http://help.sap.com/solutionmanager> > Version 7.1 SPS <No> > Application Help (English) > SAP Solution Manager Operations > Managing System Landscape Information > Setting Up the Landscape Management Infrastructure > Connecting LMDB to System Landscape Directory (SLD) > .

4. In the LMDB, you complete the information from the SLD manually.

For more information, see the SAP Solution Manager Application Help:

- If your SAP Solution Manager release is 7.2:  
<http://help.sap.com/solutionmanager> > Version 7.2 SPS <No> > Application Help (English) > Technical Infrastructures > Landscape Management Database (LMDB) > Managing Technical System Information > .
- If your SAP Solution Manager release is 7.1:  
*Managing Technical System Information* and *Managing Product System Information* at <http://help.sap.com/solutionmanager> > Version 7.1 SPS <No> > Application Help (English) > SAP Solution Manager Operations > Managing System Landscape Information > .

## Related Information

[Setting Up the Landscape Management Infrastructure](#)  
[Importing Landscape Data, CIM Model, and CR Content](#)  
[Synchronization with an SLD](#)  
[Managing Technical System Information](#)  
[Handling Technical Systems' Data - System Landscape Directory](#)

## 10.2.13 Applying the Latest Kernel and Support Package Stacks

We strongly recommend that you apply the latest kernel and Support Package stacks before you start configuring your SAP system.

### Context

For more information about release and roadmap information for the SAP Kernel versions, and how this relates to SAP system support packages - including important notes on downward compatibility and release dates - see the central SAP Kernel notes:

#### Central SAP Notes

[2083594](#) - SAP Kernel Versions and SAP Kernel Patch Levels

[3116151](#) - SP Stack Kernel Schedule Forecast

[1969546](#) - Release Roadmap for Kernel 74x and 75x

[2907361](#) - Release Roadmap for Kernel 77x and 78x

[1802333](#) - Finding information about regressions in the SAP kernel

[19466](#) - Downloading SAP kernel patches

[2966761](#) - Overview of SAP Kernel Correction Archives

[2966621](#) - Overview of Kernel-Related Software Components

[953653](#) - Rolling Kernel Switch

The white paper [Update Strategy for the Kernel of the Application](#) Server ABAP in On Premise Landscapes provides SAP recommendations on how to patch the SAP kernel.

### Procedure

- Download and apply the latest Kernel and Support Package stacks using the Software Update Manager (SUM) as described in the Software Update Manager documentation at: <https://support.sap.com/en/tools/software-logistics-tools/software-update-manager.html>
- If you want to update the kernel manually, proceed as described below:
  - a. Log on as user `<sapsid>adm` to the hosts of the SAP system instances to be updated.
  - b. Download the latest kernel for your operating system and database platform as described in SAP Note [19466](#) .
  - c. Back up the kernel directory that is specified by the profile parameter `DIR_CT_RUN`.
  - d. Extract the SAR files of the kernel Support Packages of the target SP level to a temporary directory using the `SAPCAR` tool.



- e. Copy or move the extracted programs from the temporary directory to the local kernel directory.

## 10.2.14 Installing Additional Languages and Performing Language Transport

This section describes how to install and transport additional languages.

### Context

If you have problems during the language installation, see SAP Note [2456868](#).

### Procedure

1. Configure the language settings by using transaction `118N` and choosing [118N Customizing](#) > [118N System Configuration](#) or by executing report `RSCPINST` directly.

For more information, see SAP Note [42305](#).

2. Perform the language transport using transaction `SMLT`:

#### **i** Note

German is already available in the system. Do not transport it via `SMLT`.

- a. Classify the language.
- b. Schedule the language transport.
- c. Schedule the language supplementation.

### Next Steps

#### **i** Note

You can also install additional languages later, but if you install any Support Packages in the meantime, you have to do one of the following:

- Install the Support Packages again.
- Use the report `RSTLAN_IMPORT_OCS` to extract the language-relevant information from each Support Package.

For information about the language transport, see the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:

Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA ("ABAP Platform 1809" for short) <b>and higher</b>	<a href="#">Administrating the ABAP Platform</a> > <a href="#">Administration Concepts and Tools</a> > <a href="#">Solution Life Cycle Management</a> > <a href="#">Software Logistics</a> > <a href="#">Change and Transport System</a> > <a href="#">Language Transport (BC-CTS-LAN)</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0	<a href="#">Administrating the ABAP Platform</a> > <a href="#">Administration Concepts and Tools</a> > <a href="#">Solution Life Cycle Management</a> > <a href="#">Software Logistics</a> > <a href="#">Change and Transport System</a> > <a href="#">Language Transport (BC-CTS-LAN)</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (<SP08 or higher>)	<a href="#">Solution Life Cycle Management</a> > <a href="#">Software Logistics</a> > <a href="#">Change and Transport System</a> > <a href="#">Language Transport (BC-CTS-LAN)</a>

## 10.2.15 Configuring the User Management

After the installation has completed, configure the user management of your SAP system.

### i Note

For SAP Process Integration 7.5 and SAP Solution Manager configuring the user management with an external ABAP system is mandatory. For more information, see *Preparing an External ABAP System as Source for User Data* in the Java installation guide for your operating system and database .

For SAP Process Integration 7.5 and SAP Solution Manager go to *PI 7.5: Configuring the Process Integration System After the Installation* respectively *Configuring an SAP Solution Manager System* in the Java installation guide for your operating system and database.

## Context

For Solution Manager and Process Integration 7.5, your UME has been configured with the ABAP part of the system during the target system installation. For other SAP system products this configuration is optional. For more information, see *Preparing an External ABAP System as Source for User Data* in the Java installation guide for your operating system and database .

## Procedure

After the installation of your SAP system has finished, you must decide whether you want to do the following:

- Add the system to Central User Administration (CUA)
- Use Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) synchronization

For more information, see the [Accessing the SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:

Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA ("ABAP Platform 1809" for short) <b>and higher</b>	<a href="#">Securing the ABAP Platform</a> > <a href="#">ABAP Platform Security Guide</a> > <a href="#">User Administration and Authentication</a> > <a href="#">User Management</a> > <a href="#">Identity Management</a> > <a href="#">Identity Management for System Landscapes</a> > <a href="#">Integration of User Management in Your System Landscape</a> > <a href="#">Adding an ABAP System to Your System Landscape</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0	<a href="#">Securing the ABAP Platform</a> > <a href="#">ABAP Platform Security Guide</a> > <a href="#">User Administration and Authentication</a> > <a href="#">User Management</a> > <a href="#">Identity Management</a> > <a href="#">Identity Management for System Landscapes</a> > <a href="#">Integration of User Management in Your System Landscape</a> > <a href="#">Adding an ABAP System to Your System Landscape</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (<SP08 or higher>)	<a href="#">Security</a> > <a href="#">Identity Management</a> > <a href="#">Identity Management for System Landscapes</a> > <a href="#">Integration of User Management in Your System Landscape</a> > <a href="#">Adding an ABAP System to Your System Landscape</a>

## 10.2.16 Ensuring User Security

You need to ensure the security of the users that the software provisioning manager created during the installation.

The tables below at the end of this section list the following users:

- Operating system users
- SAP system users

During the installation, the software provisioning manager by default assigned the [master password \[page 48\]](#) to all users created during the installation unless you specified other passwords.

### → Recommendation

The Master Password feature can be used as a simple method to obtain customer-specific passwords for all newly created users. A basic security rule is not to have identical passwords for different users. Following this rule, we strongly recommend individualizing the values of these passwords after the installation is complete.

### → Recommendation

In all cases, the user ID and password are encoded only when transported across the network. Therefore, we recommend using encryption at the network layer, either by using the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol for HTTP connections, or Secure Network Communications (SNC) for the SAP protocols dialog and RFC.

### ⚠ Caution

Make sure that you perform this procedure **before** the newly installed SAP system goes into production.

For the users listed below, take the precautions described in the relevant SAP security guide.

You can find the security guide in the [Security](https://help.sap.com/) section of the product page for your SAP product at <https://help.sap.com/>

## Operating System and Database Users

After the installation, operating system users for SAP system, database, and SAP Host Agent are available as listed in the following table:

### Operating System and Database Users

User Type	User	Comment
Operating system user	<sapsid>adm	SAP system administrator
	SAPService<SAPSID>	User to run the SAP system
SAP HANA database user	SAP<SAPSID>	SAP HANA database owner


### SAP Host Agent User

User Type	User	Comment
Operating system user	sapadm	SAP Host Agent administrator is the user for central monitoring services.
		You do not need to change the password of this user after the installation.
		This user is for administration purposes only.
		You are not able to log on as sapadm as this user is locked.

## SAP System Users

After the installation, ABAP system users are available. The following table shows these users with the SAP system clients in which they are available, together with recommendations on how you can ensure the security of these users.

### i Note

Client 066 is no longer available in newly installed SAP systems based on SAP NetWeaver 7.5 or higher. For more information, see SAP Note [1749142](#) .

### i Note

Client 001 is no longer available in newly installed SAP systems based on SAP S/4HANA and SAP BW/4HANA.

#### SAP System Users

User	User Name	Comment
SAP system user	SAP*	User exists in SAP system client 000.
	DDIC	User exists in SAP system client 000.

## 10.2.17 Performing the Client Copy

To get a production client, you have to perform a copy of the SAP reference client.

### Context

The software provisioning manager creates ABAP client 000 during the installation.

Use client 000 as source client for the client copy.

### Procedure

1. Maintain the new client with transaction SCC4.
2. Activate kernel user SAP\*:
  - a. Set the profile parameter `login/no_automatic_user_sapstar` to 0.
  - b. Restart the application server.
3. Log on to the new client with kernel user **SAP\*** and password **PASS**.
4. Copy the client with transaction SCC1 and profile SAP\_CUST.

5. Check the log files with transaction SCC3.
6. Create the required users. These users must have at least the authorizations required for user administration and system administration. Create a user SAP\* with all required authorizations for this user. If you want to have other users for system administration, you can also create user SAP\* without authorizations.
7. Deactivate kernel user SAP\*:
  - a. Reset `login/no_automatic_user_sapstar` to 1.
  - b. Restart the application server.

## Next Steps

For more information about the client copy and about how to perform it, see the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at :

Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA ("ABAP Platform 1809" for short) <b>and higher</b>	<a href="#">Application Server ABAP Infrastructure</a> > <a href="#">Administration of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">Administration Concepts and Tools</a> > <a href="#">Solution Life Cycle Management</a> > <a href="#">Software Logistics</a> > <a href="#">Change and Transport System</a> > <a href="#">BC - Client Copy and Transport (BC-CTS-CCO)</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0	<a href="#">Application Server ABAP Infrastructure</a> > <a href="#">Administration of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">Administration Concepts and Tools</a> > <a href="#">Solution Life Cycle Management</a> > <a href="#">Software Logistics</a> > <a href="#">Change and Transport System</a> > <a href="#">BC - Client Copy and Transport (BC-CTS-CCO)</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (<SP08 or higher>)	<a href="#">Application Server</a> > <a href="#">Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">Administration of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">Change and Transport System</a> > <a href="#">BC – Client Copy and Transport</a>

## 10.2.18 Installation or Upgrade of SAP HANA Studio

Here you find documentation about how to install or upgrade the SAP HANA Studio.

To install or upgrade SAP HANA studio, see the documentation *SAP HANA Studio Installation and Update Guide* at [https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP\\_HANA\\_PLATFORM](https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_HANA_PLATFORM) > [Installation and Upgrade](#).

## 10.2.19 Follow-Up Activities for the SAP HANA Database

[Checking the secondary database connections \[page 143\]](#)

[Checking the RFC connections \[page 143\]](#)

[Checking the spool configuration \[page 143\]](#)

[Changing the logical system name \[page 144\]](#)

[Adjusting the SAP HANA calculation views \[page 144\]](#)

[Backing Up the SAP HANA Database \[page 144\]](#)

## 10.2.19.1 Checking the secondary database connections

### Procedure

After you have copied the database, the target system has the same database connections - for example, for the DBA Cockpit - as the source system; this might cause problems. Therefore, you must check the database connections in transaction DBCO and adjust them if required.

## 10.2.19.2 Checking the RFC connections

### Procedure

After you have copied the database, the target system has the same RFC connections as the source system; this may cause problems. Therefore, you must check the RFC connections in transaction SM59 and adjust them if required.

## 10.2.19.3 Checking the spool configuration

### Procedure

After you copy the database, the target system has the same spool configuration as the source system. Therefore, you must check the spool configuration in transaction SPAD and adjust it if required.

## 10.2.19.4 Changing the logical system name

### Procedure

If the System ID of the ABAP system has changed, use transaction BDLS to change the logical system name.

## 10.2.19.5 Adjusting the SAP HANA calculation views

### Procedure

If you copied a BW system, you must adjust the SAP HANA calculation to the new system names views after the migration. This is done when calling the report RS\_BW\_POST\_MIGRATION with all options.

## 10.2.19.6 Backing Up the SAP HANA Database

We recommend that you back up the SAP HANA database after the installation has completed.

Back up the SAP HANA database as described in section *SAP HANA Database Backup and Recovery* of the *SAP HANA Administration Guide*, which you can find here:

[https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP\\_HANA\\_PLATFORM](https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_HANA_PLATFORM) ►► Administration ►

Alternatively, as of SAP HANA 2.0, you can use the SAP HANA cockpit to do so. For more information, see section *Backup and Recovery* of the documentation *SAP HANA Administration with SAP HANA Cockpit*, which you can find here:

[https://help.sap.com/viewer/product/SAP\\_HANA\\_COCKPIT/](https://help.sap.com/viewer/product/SAP_HANA_COCKPIT/) ►► Administration ►

#### i Note

Make sure that you perform a “Complete Data Backup”.



## 10.2.20 Changing Keys for the Secure Storage

The secure storage in the file system and the secure storage in the database have been encrypted with a randomly generated individual encryption key or with a default key.

In the first case, you have made a backup of the individual key because you need this value in case of failure to recover the data.

No matter what you chose during installation, you can change the encryption key at any time using the respective maintenance tool.

### → Recommendation

SAP recommends using an individual encryption key.

- For the secure storage in the file system, the key change is described in the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:  
    ▮ [Security](#) ▸ [System Security](#) ▸ [System Security for SAP NetWeaver AS ABAP Only](#) ▸ [Secure Storage in the File System \(AS ABAP\)](#) ▮
- For the secure storage in the database, the key change is described in the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:
  - **SAP systems based on SAP S/4HANA:** ▮ [Securing the ABAP Platform](#) ▸ [Security Concepts and Tools](#) ▸ [System Security](#) ▸ [System Security for AS ABAP Only](#) ▸ [Secure Storage \(ABAP\)](#) ▸ [Key Management](#) ▸ [Using Individual Encryption Keys](#) ▸ [Generating Encryption Keys](#) ▮
  - **SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0:** ▮ [Securing the ABAP Platform](#) ▸ [Security Concepts and Tools](#) ▸ [System Security](#) ▸ [System Security for AS ABAP Only](#) ▸ [Secure Storage \(ABAP\)](#) ▸ [Key Management](#) ▸ [Using Individual Encryption Keys](#) ▸ [Generating Encryption Keys](#) ▮
  - **SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0:** ▮ [Security](#) ▸ [System Security](#) ▸ [System Security for SAP NetWeaver AS ABAP Only](#) ▸ [Secure Storage \(ABAP\)](#) ▸ [Key Management](#) ▸ [Using Individual Encryption Keys](#) ▸ [Generating Encryption Keys](#) ▮

## More Information

See also the entry *Individual Encryption Key for the Secure Storage* in table *SAP System Parameters* in [SAP System Parameters \[page 48\]](#).

## 10.2.21 Performing a Full System Backup

You must perform a full system backup, including the operating system disk, system state, and all other disks, after the configuration of your SAP system. If required, you can also perform a full system backup after the installation (recommended). In addition, we recommend you to regularly back up your database.

### Prerequisites

- You are logged on as user <sapsid>adm.
- You have shut down the SAP system and database.

### Procedure

For more information about backing up your SAP system on Windows, see the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:

► *Solution Life Cycle Management* ► *Backup and Recovery* ► *Backing Up and Restoring your SAP System on Windows* ►

## 10.2.22 Logging on to the SAP Web Dispatcher Management Console

This section describes how to log on to the SAP Web Dispatcher.

### Context

#### i Note

This step is only required if you chose to install an embedded SAP Web Dispatcher instance within the ASCS instance.

You must log on to the SAP Web Dispatcher Management Console to do the following:

- Check whether the SAP Web Dispatcher was installed successfully,
- Change the password of the webadm user,
- Access monitoring and administration tools.

## Procedure

1. Open a web browser.
2. Enter the following URL, depending on whether you use HTTP or HTTPS:

`http(s)://<Webdispatcher_Host>:<HTTP(S)_PORT>/sap/wdisp/admin/public/default.html`

### ❁ Example

`https://plx282:44300/sap/wdisp/admin/public/default.html`

3. Log on as user `webadm` with the password that you entered during the input phase of the installation.  
The *SAP Web Dispatcher Monitor* screen appears.
4. We recommend that you change the password of `webadm` immediately after the installation for security reasons.

Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA ("ABAP Platform 1809" for short) <b>and higher</b>	► <i>Application Server ABAP - Infrastructure</i> ► <i>Components of Application Server ABAP</i> ► <i>SAP Web Dispatcher</i> ► <i>Administration of the SAP Web Dispatcher</i> ► <i>Using the Web Administration Interface</i> ► <i>Area menu</i> ► <i>Section "HTTP Handler"</i> ►
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0	► <i>Application Server ABAP - Infrastructure</i> ► <i>Components of Application Server ABAP</i> ► <i>SAP Web Dispatcher</i> ► <i>Administration of the SAP Web Dispatcher</i> ► <i>Using the Web Administration Interface</i> ► <i>Area menu</i> ► <i>Section "HTTP Handler"</i> ►
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (<SP08 or higher>)	► <i>Application Help</i> ► <i>Function-Oriented View</i> ► <i>Application Server Infrastructure</i> ► <i>Components of SAP NetWeaver Application Server</i> ► <i>SAP Web Dispatcher</i> ► <i>Administration of the SAP Web Dispatcher</i> ► <i>Using the Web Administration Interface</i> ► <i>Area menu</i> ► <i>Section "HTTP Handler"</i> ►

## Related Information

[ASCS Instance with Embedded SAP Web Dispatcher \[page 35\]](#)

## 10.2.23 SAP Web Dispatcher Configuration (Optional)

After installing SAP Web Dispatcher, you must configure it to be able to use it.

### Note

This step is only required if you chose to install an embedded SAP Web Dispatcher instance within the ASCS instance.

You can find the configuration information in the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:

Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA ("ABAP Platform 1809" for short) <b>and higher</b>	<a href="#">Application Server ABAP - Infrastructure</a> > <a href="#">Components of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">SAP Web Dispatcher</a> > <a href="#">Administration of the SAP Web Dispatcher</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0	<a href="#">Application Server ABAP - Infrastructure</a> > <a href="#">Components of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">SAP Web Dispatcher</a> > <a href="#">Administration of the SAP Web Dispatcher</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (< <a href="#">SP08</a> or <a href="#">higher</a> >)	<a href="#">Application Server</a> > <a href="#">Application Server Infrastructure</a> > <a href="#">Components of SAP NetWeaver Application Server</a> > <a href="#">SAP Web Dispatcher</a> > <a href="#">Administration of the SAP Web Dispatcher</a>

## Related Information

[ASCS Instance with Embedded SAP Web Dispatcher \[page 35\]](#)

## 10.2.24 Gateway Configuration

You have to configure the gateway to be able to use it.

### Note

This step is only relevant if you installed a gateway embedded in the ASCS instance. For more information, see [ASCS Instance with Embedded Gateway \[page 37\]](#).

You can find all relevant configuration information in the gateway documentation in the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:

Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA ("ABAP Platform 1809" for short) <b>and higher</b>	<a href="#">Application Server ABAP - Infrastructure</a> > <a href="#">Components of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">RFC Gateway</a> > <a href="#">Administration of the RFC Gateway</a> > <a href="#">Configuring the Gateway</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0	<a href="#">Application Server ABAP - Infrastructure</a> > <a href="#">Components of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">RFC Gateway</a> > <a href="#">Administration of the RFC Gateway</a> > <a href="#">Configuring the Gateway</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 ( <a href="#">&lt;SP08 or higher&gt;</a> )	<a href="#">Application Server</a> > <a href="#">Application Server Infrastructure</a> > <a href="#">Components of SAP NetWeaver Application Server</a> > <a href="#">Gateway</a> > <a href="#">Configuring the Gateway</a>

## Related Information

[ASCS Instance with Embedded Gateway \[page 37\]](#)

## 10.3 Performing a Full System Backup

You must perform a full system backup, including the operating system disk, system state, and all other disks, after the configuration of your SAP system. If required, you can also perform a full system backup after the installation (recommended). In addition, we recommend you to regularly back up your database.

### Prerequisites

- You are logged on as user <sapsid>adm.
- You have shut down the SAP system and database.

## Procedure

For more information about backing up your SAP system on Windows, see the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:

► [Solution Life Cycle Management](#) ► [Backup and Recovery](#) ► [Backing Up and Restoring your SAP System on Windows](#) ►

## 10.4 Logging on to the SAP Web Dispatcher Management Console

This section describes how to log on to the SAP Web Dispatcher.

### Context

#### Note

This step is only required if you chose to install an embedded SAP Web Dispatcher instance within the ASCS instance.

You must log on to the SAP Web Dispatcher Management Console to do the following:

- Check whether the SAP Web Dispatcher was installed successfully,
- Change the password of the webadm user,
- Access monitoring and administration tools.

## Procedure

1. Open a web browser.
2. Enter the following URL, depending on whether you use HTTP or HTTPS:

```
http(s)://<Webdispatcher_Host>:<HTTP(S)_PORT>/sap/wdisp/admin/public/default.html
```

#### Example

```
https://plx282:44300/sap/wdisp/admin/public/default.html
```

3. Log on as user webadm with the password that you entered during the input phase of the installation.

The *SAP Web Dispatcher Monitor* screen appears.

4. We recommend that you change the password of `webadm` immediately after the installation for security reasons.

Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA ("ABAP Platform 1809" for short) <b>and higher</b>	<a href="#">Application Server ABAP - Infrastructure</a> > <a href="#">Components of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">SAP Web Dispatcher</a> > <a href="#">Administration of the SAP Web Dispatcher</a> > <a href="#">Using the Web Administration Interface</a> > <a href="#">Area menu</a> > <a href="#">Section "HTTP Handler"</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0	<a href="#">Application Server ABAP - Infrastructure</a> > <a href="#">Components of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">SAP Web Dispatcher</a> > <a href="#">Administration of the SAP Web Dispatcher</a> > <a href="#">Using the Web Administration Interface</a> > <a href="#">Area menu</a> > <a href="#">Section "HTTP Handler"</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (< <a href="#">SP08</a> or <a href="#">higher</a> >)	<a href="#">Application Help</a> > <a href="#">Function-Oriented View</a> > <a href="#">Application Server Infrastructure</a> > <a href="#">Components of SAP NetWeaver Application Server</a> > <a href="#">SAP Web Dispatcher</a> > <a href="#">Administration of the SAP Web Dispatcher</a> > <a href="#">Using the Web Administration Interface</a> > <a href="#">Area menu</a> > <a href="#">Section "HTTP Handler"</a>

## Related Information

[ASCS Instance with Embedded SAP Web Dispatcher \[page 35\]](#)

## 10.5 SAP Web Dispatcher Configuration (Optional)

After installing SAP Web Dispatcher, you must configure it to be able to use it.

### Note

This step is only required if you chose to install an embedded SAP Web Dispatcher instance within the ASCS instance.

You can find the configuration information in the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:

Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA ("ABAP Platform 1809" for short) <b>and higher</b>	<a href="#">Application Server ABAP - Infrastructure</a> > <a href="#">Components of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">SAP Web Dispatcher</a> > <a href="#">Administration of the SAP Web Dispatcher</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0	<a href="#">Application Server ABAP - Infrastructure</a> > <a href="#">Components of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">SAP Web Dispatcher</a> > <a href="#">Administration of the SAP Web Dispatcher</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (<SP08 or higher>)	<a href="#">Application Server</a> > <a href="#">Application Server Infrastructure</a> > <a href="#">Components of SAP NetWeaver Application Server</a> > <a href="#">SAP Web Dispatcher</a> > <a href="#">Administration of the SAP Web Dispatcher</a>

## Related Information

[ASCS Instance with Embedded SAP Web Dispatcher \[page 35\]](#)

## 10.6 Gateway Configuration

You have to configure the gateway to be able to use it.

### Note

This step is only relevant if you installed a gateway embedded in the ASCS instance. For more information, see [ASCS Instance with Embedded Gateway \[page 37\]](#).

You can find all relevant configuration information in the gateway documentation in the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:

Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA ("ABAP Platform 1809" for short) <b>and higher</b>	<a href="#">Application Server ABAP - Infrastructure</a> > <a href="#">Components of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">RFC Gateway</a> > <a href="#">Administration of the RFC Gateway</a> > <a href="#">Configuring the Gateway</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0	<a href="#">Application Server ABAP - Infrastructure</a> > <a href="#">Components of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">RFC Gateway</a> > <a href="#">Administration of the RFC Gateway</a> > <a href="#">Configuring the Gateway</a>



Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (<SP08 or higher>)	<a href="#">Application Server</a> > <a href="#">Application Server Infrastructure</a> > <a href="#">Components of SAP NetWeaver Application Server</a> > <a href="#">Gateway</a> > <a href="#">Configuring the Gateway</a>

## Related Information

[ASCS Instance with Embedded Gateway \[page 37\]](#)

# 11 Additional Information

The following sections provide additional information about **optional** preparation, installation, and post-installation tasks.

There is also a section describing how to delete an SAP system.

## 11.1 Integration of LDAP Directory Services

This section explains the benefits of using the SAP system with the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) directory and gives an overview of the configuration steps required to use an SAP system with the directory.

### ⚠ Caution

SAP recommends that you no longer use the LDAP configuration options provided by the software provisioning manager, because current security guidelines make it unsafe to run SAP applications on a domain controller. Instead, SAP recommends that you follow the instructions in SAP Note [3251648](#) to enable LDAP directory service integration of your SAP system with Active Directory.

LDAP defines a standard protocol for accessing directory services, which is supported by various directory products such as Microsoft Active Directory, and OpenLDAP `slapd`. Using directory services enables important information in a corporate network to be stored centrally on a server. The advantage of storing information centrally for the entire network is that you only have to maintain data once, which avoids redundancy and inconsistency.

If an LDAP directory is available in your corporate network, you can configure the SAP system to use this feature. For example, a correctly configured SAP system can read information from the directory and also store information there.

### i Note

The SAP system can interact with the Active Directory using the LDAP protocol, which defines:

- The communication protocol between the SAP system and the directory
- How data in the directory is structured, accessed, or modified

If a directory other than the Active Directory also supports the LDAP protocol, the SAP system can take advantage of the information stored there. For example, if there is an LDAP directory on a UNIX or Windows server, you can configure the SAP system to use the information available there. In the following text, directories other than the Active Directory that implement the LDAP protocol are called **generic LDAP directories**.

This section does **not** provide information about the use of LDAP directories with the LDAP Connector. For more information about using and configuring the LDAP Connector for an ABAP system, see the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:

Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA ("ABAP Platform 1809" for short) <b>and higher</b>	<a href="#">Securing the ABAP Platform</a> > <a href="#">ABAP Platform Security Guide</a> > <a href="#">User Administration and Authentication</a> > <a href="#">User Management</a> > <a href="#">Identity Management</a> > <a href="#">User and Role Administration of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">Configuration of User and Role Administration</a> > <a href="#">Directory Services</a> > <a href="#">Configuring Connection Data for the Directory Service</a> > <a href="#">Configuring Connection Data with the LDAP Connector</a> > <a href="#">Configuring the LDAP Connector</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0	<a href="#">Securing the ABAP Platform</a> > <a href="#">ABAP Platform Security Guide</a> > <a href="#">User Administration and Authentication</a> > <a href="#">User Management</a> > <a href="#">Identity Management</a> > <a href="#">User and Role Administration of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">Configuration of User and Role Administration</a> > <a href="#">Directory Services</a> > <a href="#">Configuring Connection Data for the Directory Service</a> > <a href="#">Configuring Connection Data with the LDAP Connector</a> > <a href="#">Configuring the LDAP Connector</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (<SP08 or higher>)	<a href="#">Security</a> > <a href="#">Identity Management</a> > <a href="#">User and Role Administration of Application Server ABAP</a> > <a href="#">Configuration of User and Role Administration</a> > <a href="#">Directory Services</a> > <a href="#">LDAP Connector</a>

## Prerequisites

You can only configure the SAP system for Active Directory services or other LDAP directories if these are **already available** on the network. The Active Directory is automatically available on all domain controllers. A generic LDAP directory is an additional component that you have to install separately on a UNIX or Windows server.

## Features

In the SAP environment, you can exploit the information stored in an Active Directory or generic LDAP directory by using:

- SAP Logon
- The SAP Microsoft Management Console (SAP MMC)

For more information about the automatic registration of SAP components in LDAP directories and the benefits of using it in SAP Logon and SAP MMC, see the documentation *SAP System Information in Directory Services* at:

<https://archive.sap.com/documents/docs/DOC-14384> 

- The SAP Management Console (SAP MC)

## SAP Logon

Instead of using a fixed list of systems and message servers, you can configure SAP Logon in the `sapmsg.ini` configuration file to find SAP systems and their message servers from the directory. If you configure SAP logon to use the LDAP directory, it queries the directory each time *Server* or *Group* selection is chosen to fetch up-to-date information on available SAP systems.

To use LDAP operation mode, check that the `sapmsg.ini` file contains the following:

```
[Address]

Mode=LDAPdirectory

LDAPserver=

LDAPnode=

LDAPoptions=
```

Distinguish the following cases:

- If you use an Active Directory, you must set **LDAPoptions="DirType=NT5ADS"**. For more information, see the SAP system profile parameter `ldap/options`.
- You must specify the directory servers (for example, `LDAPserver=pcintel6 p24709`) if one of the following is true:
  - The client is not located in the same domain forest as the Active Directory
  - The operating system does not have a directory service client (Windows NT and Windows 9X without installed *dsclient*).

For more information, see the SAP system profile parameter `ldap/servers`.

- For other directory services, you can use *LDAPnode* to specify the distinguished name of the SAP root node. For more information, see the SAP system profile parameter `ldap/saproot`.

## SAP MMC

The SAP MMC is a graphical user interface (GUI) for administering and monitoring SAP systems from a central location. It is automatically set up when you install an SAP system on Windows. If the SAP system has been prepared correctly, the SAP MMC presents and analyzes system information that it gathers from various sources, including the Active Directory.

Integrating the Active Directory as a source of information has advantages for the SAP MMC. It can read system information straight from the directory that automatically registers changes to the system landscape. As a result, up-to-date information about all SAP application servers, their status, and parameter settings is always available in the SAP MMC.

If you need to administer distributed systems, we especially recommend that you use the SAP MMC together with Active Directory services. You can keep track of significant events in all of the systems from a single SAP MMC interface. You do not need to manually register changes in the system configuration. Instead, such changes are automatically updated in the directory and subsequently reflected in the SAP MMC.

If your SAP system is part of a heterogeneous SAP system landscape that comprises systems or instances both on Unix and Windows operating systems, you can also use the SAP MMC for operating and monitoring the instances running on Unix.

## SAP MC

You can also use the SAP Management Console (SAP MC) for administering and monitoring SAP systems from a central location.

For more information about the SAP MC and about how to configure it to access LDAP directories, see the documentation *SAP Management Console* in the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:

Release	SAP Library Path (Continued)
SAP systems based on foundation on ABAP Platform 1809, version for SAP HANA ("ABAP Platform 1809" for short) <b>and higher</b>	<a href="#">Administrating the ABAP Platform</a> > <a href="#">Administration Concepts and Tools</a> > <a href="#">Solution Life Cycle Management</a> > <a href="#">SAP Management Console</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 2.0	<a href="#">Administrating the ABAP Platform</a> > <a href="#">Administration Concepts and Tools</a> > <a href="#">Solution Life Cycle Management</a> > <a href="#">SAP Management Console</a>
SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (<SP08 or higher>)	<a href="#">Solution Life Cycle Management</a> > <a href="#">SAP Management Console</a>

## Configuration Tasks for LDAP Directories

This section describes the configuration tasks for the Active Directory or other (generic) LDAP directories.

- **Configuration Tasks for Active Directory**

To enable an SAP system to use the features offered by the Active Directory, you have to configure the Active Directory so that it can store SAP system data.

To prepare the directory, you use the software provisioning manager to automatically:

### ⚠ Caution

SAP recommends that you no longer use the LDAP configuration options provided by the software provisioning manager, because current security guidelines make it unsafe to run SAP applications on a domain controller. Instead, SAP recommends that you follow the instructions in SAP Note [3251648](#) to enable LDAP directory service integration of your SAP system with Active Directory.

- Extend the Active Directory schema to include the SAP-specific data types
- Create the domain accounts required to enable the SAP system to access and modify the Active Directory. These are the group `SAP_LDAP` and the user `sapldap`.
- Create the root container where information related to SAP is stored
- Control access to the container for SAP data by giving members of the `SAP_LDAP` group permission to read and write to the directory

You do this by [running the software provisioning manager \[page 95\]](#) and choosing: [Generic Installation Options](#) > [Database](#) > [Preparations](#) > [LDAP Registration](#) > [Active Directory Configuration](#).

### Note

You have to configure the directory server only **once**. Then all SAP systems that need to register in this directory server can use this setup.

- **Configuration Tasks for Generic LDAP Directories**

To configure other LDAP directories, refer to the documentation of your directory vendor. The software provisioning manager software contains schema extensions for directory servers Netscape/iPlanet (ldregns4.txt, ldregns5.txt) and OpenLDAP slapd (ldregslapd.schema). Both files are located in the directory \<Unpack\_Directory>\COMMON\ADS. After you have applied the schema extension, you need to create a root container to store the SAP-related information and create a directory user that the SAP application server can use to write information to the directory.

For more information about how to set up a Netscape/iPlanet directory server, see the documentation [SAP System Information in Directory Services](#) at:

<https://archive.sap.com/documents/docs/DOC-14384>

- **Enabling the SAP System LDAP Registration**

Once you have correctly configured your directory server, you can enable the LDAP registration of the SAP system by setting some profile parameters in the default profile.

To do this, [run the software provisioning manager \[page 95\]](#) **once** for your system and choose:

### Caution

SAP recommends that you no longer use the LDAP configuration options provided by the software provisioning manager, because current security guidelines make it unsafe to run SAP applications on a domain controller. Instead, SAP recommends that you follow the instructions in SAP Note [3251648](#) to enable LDAP directory service integration of your SAP system with Active Directory.

► [Generic Installation Options](#) ► [<Database>](#) ► [Preparations](#) ► [LDAP Registration](#) ► [LDAP Support](#) ►

If you use a directory server other than Microsoft Active Directory and/or non-Windows application servers, you have to store the directory user and password information by using ldappasswd pf=<any\_instance\_profile>. The information is encrypted for storage in DIR\_GLOBAL and is therefore valid for all application servers. After restarting all application servers and start services, the system is registered in your directory server. The registration protocols of the components are dev\_ldap\*. The registration is updated every time a component starts.

## 11.2 SAP Directories

This section describes the directories that are available in an SAP system.

Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

If you want to install a high-availability system, see also [Directories in a Microsoft Failover Cluster Configuration \[page 195\]](#).

End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

The software provisioning manager automatically creates the following directories during the installation:

- \usr\sap

This directory is created on the:

- **Global** host and **shared** with the network share `sapmnt`

Only valid for 'High Availability': non-HA

In a non-high-availability-system, you can install the primary application server instance or the (A)SCS instance on the global host or on any other host.

End of 'High Availability': non-HA

On global hosts, the `\usr\sap` directory contains general SAP software, global, and local (instance-specific) data.

For this, the software provisioning manager creates the global directory `usr\sap\<SAPSID>\SYS`, which physically exists only once for each SAP system. It consists of the following subdirectories:

- `global` – contains globally shared data
- `profile` – contains the profiles for all instances
- `exe` – contains executable replication directory for all instances and platforms

During the installation of an SAP system distributed over several hosts, you can now specify that the SAP Global directories are installed on a host different from the ASCS instance host. For more information, see SAP Note [3349121](#).

- **Local** host and **shared** with the name `saploc`.

Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

In a high availability system this directory is located on a local disk. You have at least two disk drives with a `usr\sap` directory structure.

End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

On local hosts, the `\usr\sap\<SAPSID>\<Instance_Name>` directory contains copies of the SAP software and local (instance-specific) data.

### Note

- Since SAP traces for the instance are created in `\usr\sap`, make sure that there is sufficient space available in this directory. Changes in SAP profiles can also affect the disk space.
- The executables on the local host are replicated from those on the global host every time the local instance is started. The SAP copy program `sapcpe` compares the binaries in the `<Platform>` directory on the global host and the binaries in the `exe` directory on the application server. If the binaries in the `exe` directory are older than those in the `<Platform>` directory, `sapcpe` replaces them with the newer version of the global host.

Other application servers access the global data using the Universal Naming Convention (UNC) path `\\<SAPGLOBALHOST>\sapmnt`. The SAP programs access their instance-specific data with the UNC path `\\<SAPLOCALHOST>\saploc`. If the UNC path points to a local directory, the local path (and not the UNC path) is used to access the directory.

The parameters `SAPGLOBALHOST` and `SAPLOCALHOST` have the **same** values on the global host.

Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

### Note

In a high-availability system, file shares pointing to directories on shared disks are only visible or can be accessed with the virtual host name of the cluster group the shared disks belong to.

End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

- `\usr\sap\trans`

The transport directory contains SAP software for the transport of objects between SAP systems. The software provisioning manager by default creates it on the `SAPGLOBALHOST`.

If you want to have it created on another host, or if you want to use an already existing transport host of your SAP system landscape, you can specify another host during the installation. In this case, you have to prepare that host to allow the new SAP system to use it as transport host. For more information, see [Preparing the SAP System Transport Host \[page 73\]](#).

## Directory Structure

The following figures show how the physical directory `\usr\sap` is shared on the global host in a standard and in a distributed system. In both cases, the UNC paths are used as follows:

- `\\<SAPGLOBALHOST>\sapmnt` to access global directories
- `\\<SAPLOCALHOST>\saploc` to access local instance-specific data

### i Note

There are the following instance names available in an SAP system:

ABAP central services instance: `ASCS<Instance_Number>`

Primary application server instance: `D<Instance_Number>`

Additional application server instance: `D<Instance_Number>`

Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

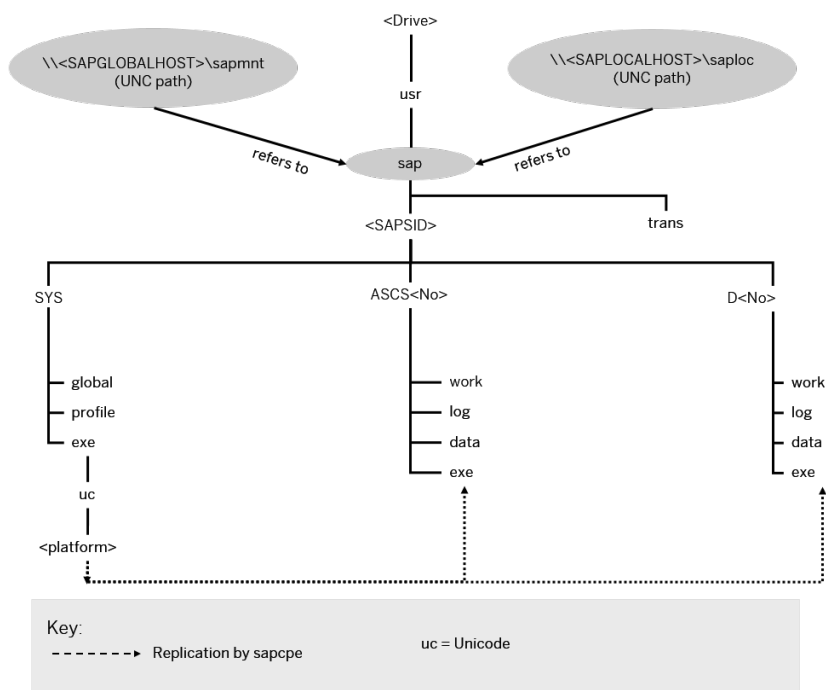
**High Availability only:** Enqueue Replication Server instance: `ERS<Instance_Number>`

End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

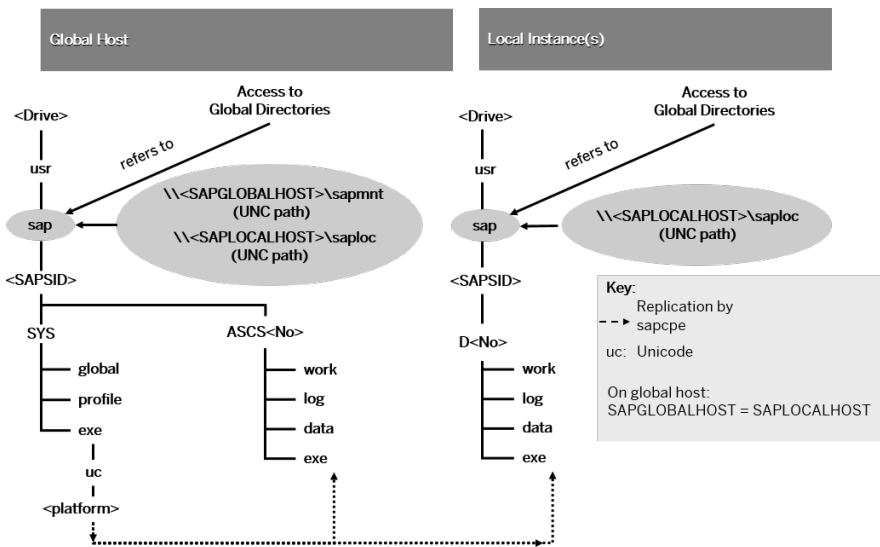
### Directory Structure on the Global Host in a Standard (Central) ABAP System

On the global host in a standard (central) ABAP system, all application server instances, including the primary application server instance, are named `D<Instance_Number>`.

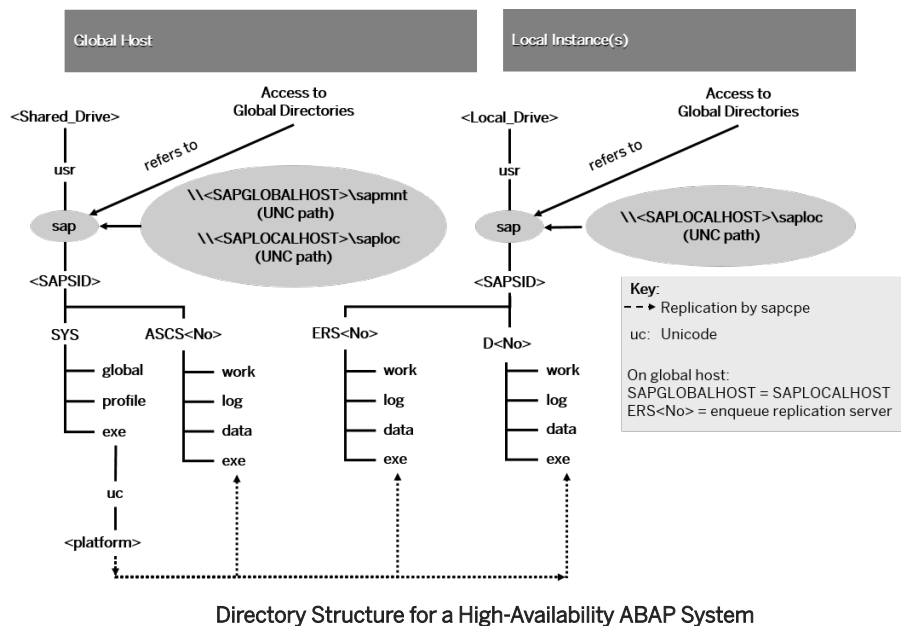




Directory Structure on the Global Host in a Standard (Central) ABAP System



Directory Structure for a Distributed ABAP System



## 11.3 Performing a Domain Installation Without Being a Domain Administrator

It is not required to perform the installation of the SAP system with a user who is a member of the `Domain Admins` group. For security reasons most customers do not provide this permission to SAP or database administrators. If the `Domain Admin` right has been granted, you can start any SAP installation because the user will have all necessary rights to install a standard, distributed or high-availability system.

An alternative is to ask the domain administrator to grant the required permissions to the user which installs SAP or the database. This domain user must be a member of the local `Administrators` group. In most cases the domain administrator will define an OU (Organizational Unit) structure, where all SAP systems and their related domain objects belong to.

To perform the installation with a domain user, the user account must meet the following requirements:

1. Create/Delete/Modify Users and Groups within OUs only. Ask the AD administrator about the company's OU concept.
2. Create/Delete/Modify Computer Objects within this OU. This is required for users which install SAP or database applications in Failover Clusters, SAP Landscape Management environments or other high-availability (HA) environments.  
Optional rights might be necessary related to your company's security policy, for example:
3. Create/Delete/Modify DNS server records within a specific DNS zone, where the Windows hosts with SAP software belong to.
4. Create/Delete/Modify Organizational Unit objects within a specific OUs only.

For standard and distributed installations (not HA installations!) the domain administrator can prepare the user and group objects in the domain for you. In this case, the domain user which will be used for the installation does not need any of the above permissions.

The required objects in the domain are:

1. Domain group `SAP_<SAPSID>_GlobalAdmin`

- The group scope should be GLOBAL, the group type should be SECURITY.
2. Two new SAP system users <sapsid>adm and SAPService<SAPSID>.
  3. The users <sapsid>adm and SAPServiceSAPSID must be members of the domain group SAP\_<SAPSID>\_GlobalAdmin.

#### **i Note**

The software provisioning manager creates the operating system user for the SAP Host Agent by default as a local user that is not

a member of the local Administrators group. If you want to create this user manually as a domain user, you must perform the following steps:

Creating the SAP Host Agent User and Group Manually

1. Create the new global group SAP\_GlobalAdmin
2. Create the SAP system user sapadm.
3. Add the user sapadm to the newly created group SAP\_GlobalAdmin.

However, for security reasons we strongly recommend that you create this user as a local user.

## **11.4 Checking and Changing the Paging File Settings on Windows Server**

This section describes how to check and change the paging file size on Windows Server with PowerShell.

The PowerShell commands also work in previous Windows versions where PowerShell is available.

#### **i Note**

Some paging file operations require a reboot of the server to activate the changes you made. Wmi-commands do not indicate whether a reboot is required or not. Therefore, we recommend rebooting your system every time you change the paging file settings with PowerShell.

### **Prerequisites**

Always start the PowerShell in elevated mode (run as administrator).

### **Procedure**

#### **Checking the Size of a Paging File**

1. Start Windows PowerShell.

2. Check whether the default value *Automatic manage pagefile size for all devices* is activated.

#### i Note

We do not support automatically managed page file sizes.

To check this, enter the following command:

```
(Get-WmiObject Win32_Pagefile) -eq $null
```

If *Automatic manage pagefile size for all devices* is enabled, the output value is *True*.

If necessary, disable *Automatic manage pagefile size for all devices* with the following command:

```
$sys = Get-WmiObject Win32_Computersystem -EnableAllPrivileges
$sysAutomaticManagedPagefile = $false
$sys.put()
```

3. Check the size of the paging files with the following command:

```
Get-WmiObject WIN32_Pagefile | Select-Object Name, InitialSize, MaximumSize,
FileSize
```

The output looks like the following:

MaximumSize	Name	InitialSize	FileSize
-----	----	-----	-----
41943040000	C:\pagefile.sys	0	0
41943040000	E:\pagefile.sys	40000	80000

In this example, in the first line, the *InitialSize* and *MaximumSize* values of a paging file are 0, which means that the paging file size is *system managed* (not recommended).

In the second line, the paging file size has a minimum and a maximum size (recommended).

### Changing the Size of a Single Paging File

Changing the *InitialSize* and *MaximumSize* values of a paging file to a size other than 0, will automatically switch off *system managed size*.

In the following example, we change the size of the paging file on *C:* to the *InitialSize* of 40 GB and to the *MaximumSize* of 80 GB.

Use the following commands in a PowerShell:

```
$Pagefile = Get-WmiObject Win32_PagefileSetting | Where-Object {$_.name -eq
"C:\pagefile.sys"}

$Pagefile.InitialSize = 40000

$Pagefile.MaximumSize = 80000

$Pagefile.put()
```

Typically, you choose the same value for *InitialSize* and *MaximumSize*.

#### i Note

The sum of all paging files *InitialSize* values must be equal to or higher than the value recommended for your SAP system.

### Creating a Second Paging File on Another Disk

You might want to create a second or additional paging files to improve system performance, or if your disk does not have enough space.

To do so, enter the following commands in a PowerShell:

```
$Pagefile = Get-WmiObject Win32_PagefileSetting
$pagefile.Name = "E:\pagefile.sys"
$pagefile.Caption = "E:\pagefile.sys"
$pagefile.Description = "'pagefile.sys' @ E:\"
$pagefile.SettingID = "pagefile.sys @ E:"
$pagefile.InitialSize = 80000
$pagefile.MaximumSize = 80000
$pagefile.put()
```

### Deleting a Paging File on a Specific Device

To delete a paging file, enter the following commands in a PowerShell:

```
$pagefile = Get-WmiObject Win32_PagefileSetting | Where-Object {$_.name -eq
"E:\pagefile.sys"}
$pagefile.delete()
```

## 11.5 Installation of Multiple Components in One Database


You can install **multiple** SAP systems in a **single** database. This is called Multiple Components in One Database (MCOD).

### → Recommendation

MCOD is generally available and there is no intention to de-support this installation feature.

However, SAP recommends that customers should **not** use the MCOD feature when installing new systems.

The major drawbacks are as follows:

- Previous-point-in-time (PPT) recovery of a single system within an MCOD installation becomes a highly complex and time-consuming procedure.
- SAP Landscape Management (LaMa) is generally not supported for MCOD installations. For more information, see SAP Note [1709155](#) .
- There are strong dependencies, for example on the database version used for the MCOD system.
- Downtime - planned or unplanned - always affects all systems sharing the same database.

**Exception:** In case of a dual-stack split you can use the “Keep Database” option thus keeping ABAP and Java stack in one database. There, the PPT recovery problem does not apply because both stacks belong logically together and would always be recovered jointly anyhow. However, keep in mind that even for this

specific case the introduction of SAP Landscape Management would require a split into separate database subsystems.

Additional information is available in SAP Note [2146542](#).

MCOD is available with all SAP components and all the major databases for the SAP system. No extra effort is required because the MCODE installation is fully integrated into the standard installation procedure. MCODE is not an additional installation option. Instead, it is an option of the database instance installation.

A productive SAP system with SAP HANA database cannot be an MCODE system. For more information about the supported MCODE systems with SAP HANA Database, see SAP Notes [1661202](#) and [1681092](#).

With MCODE we distinguish two scenarios:

- The installation of an SAP system in a new database
- The installation of an additional SAP system in an existing database (MCOD)

## Prerequisites

- For more information about MCODE and its availability on different platforms, see *Multiple Components in One Database (MCOD)* at: <https://wiki.scn.sap.com/wiki/pages/viewpage.action?pageId=448466580>.
- Since SAP does not support mixed solutions with MCODE, your SAP system must contain Unicode SAP instances only.
- Improved sizing required  
You calculate the CPU usage for an MCODE database by adding up the CPU usage for each individual SAP system. You can do the same for memory resources and disk space.  
You can size multiple components in one database by sizing each individual component using the **Quick Sizer** tool and then adding the requirements together. For more information about the **Quick Sizer**, see <http://sap.com/sizing>.

## Features

- Reduced administration effort
- Consistent system landscape for backup, system copy, administration, and recovery
- Increased security and reduced database failure for multiple SAP systems due to monitoring and administration of only one database
- Independent upgrade  
In an MCODE landscape, you can upgrade a single component independently from the other components running in the same database, assuming that the upgraded component runs on the same database version. However, if you need to restore a backup, be aware that all other components are also affected.

### i Note

Special MCODE considerations and differences from the standard procedure are listed where relevant in the installation documentation.

## Constraints

- We **strongly recommend** that you test MCOD in a test or development system. We recommend that you run MCOD systems in the same context. We do not recommend that you mix test, development, and production systems in the same MCOD.
- In the event of database failure, all SAP systems running on the single database are affected.
- Automated support in an MCOD landscape for the following administrative tasks depends on your operating system and database:
  - Copying a single component from an MCOD landscape to another database at database level.
  - Uninstalling a single component from an MCOD landscape requires some additional steps. You can use a remote connection to SAP support to request help with these tasks. For more information, see <http://support.sap.com/remotecconnection>.
- You **cannot** install a Unicode ABAP system with a non-Unicode ABAP system in one database.
- Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

You **cannot** install multiple components in one database with Microsoft Failover Clustering. For more information, see [High Availability with Microsoft Failover Clustering \[page 179\]](#).

End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)
- For the first SAP system, the database system ID can be different from the SAP system ID.
- For the second SAP system, you must use the same `<DBSID>` as for the first SAP system.
- If you decide to turn off database logging during the database load phase of the installation, you need to plan downtime for all MCOD systems sharing the database.

## 11.6 Starting and Stopping the SAP System

You use this procedure to start and stop the SAP system or single instances after the installation with the **SAP Microsoft Management Console (SAP MMC)** or SAPControl.

### ⚠ Caution

Note the following restrictions about starting and stopping the database instance with the SAP MMC or SAPControl:

Only valid for 'High Availability': non-HA

In a non-high-availability system, you can use the SAP MMC or SAPControl to start the database instance. To stop the database instance, however, you must use the relevant database administration tools.

End of 'High Availability': non-HA

Only valid for 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

In a high-availability system, you can neither start nor stop the database instance with the SAP MMC or SAPControl. For more information, see [Starting and Stopping the SAP System in an HA Configuration \[page 209\]](#).

End of 'High Availability': HA (Windows)

## Prerequisites

The user who wants to start and stop the SAP system with the SAP MMC, must be a member of the local administrators group.

## Procedure

### Starting and Stopping the SAP System with the SAP MMC

With the SAP MMC, you can start or stop installed SAP instances – except the database instance – locally on the host that you are logged on to. If the SAP MMC is configured for central system administration, you can start or stop the entire system from a single host.

#### i Note

- To stop the database instance you must use the relevant database administration tools.
- You can also start and stop a UNIX system with the SAP MMC.
- The SAP MMC is not available on Windows Server Core.

For more information about the SAP MMC, see the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:

► [Solution Life Cycle Management](#) ► [SAP Microsoft Management Console: Windows](#) ►

To start or stop the SAP system – except the database instance – with the SAP MMC, perform the following steps:

1. Start the SAP MMC on the SAP system host.
2. Right-click the SAP system node and choose [Start](#) or [Stop](#).  
All SAP instances listed under the system node start or stop in the correct order.
3. To stop the database instance, use the relevant database administration tools.



4. If the SAP system is installed on multiple hosts, you have the following options to start or stop your system:
  - You start or stop the SAP instances – except the database instance – using the SAP MMC on each host.
  - You add the remote instances to the SAP MMC configuration to start or stop all instances from a single SAP MMC.To do so, do one of the following:
  - You configure the SAP MMC manually. For more information, see *Changing the Configuration of the SAP MMC* in the SAP MMC documentation.
  - You use the automatic LDAP registration. For more information, see *Configuring SAP MMC for Active Directory Services* in the SAP MMC documentation.

### Starting and Stopping the SAP System with SAPControl

To start or stop the SAP system – except the database instance – with SAPControl (`sapcontrol.exe`), perform the following steps:

- To start or stop the complete SAP system with SAPControl, open a PowerShell in elevated mode, and enter the following command:  

```
sapcontrol -prot PIPE -nr <Instance_Number> -function StartSystem  
sapcontrol -prot PIPE -nr <Instance_Number> -function StopSystem
```
- To start or stop a single instance with SAPControl, open a PowerShell in elevated mode, and enter the following command:  

```
sapcontrol -prot PIPE -nr <Instance_Number> -function Start  
sapcontrol -prot PIPE -nr <Instance_Number> -function Stop
```
- To stop the database instance, use the relevant database administration tools.

## 11.7 Configuring the Windows Server Firewall after SAP installation

### Use

In Windows Server the firewall is configured to allow only a small set of Windows-specific inbound IP connections.

Therefore, we recommend that you do **not** turn on the Windows firewall after you have installed your SAP system. Instead, we recommend that you secure network access to your SAP system with the physical firewall or a router Access Control List (ACL) within your datacenter.

If, for some reason, you want to use the Windows Server firewall, you have to configure the Windows firewall and define a set of *Inbound Rules* for the TCP/IP port numbers that are used by your system. Otherwise, your SAP system might not operate.

For more information about the port numbers used, see the documentation *TCP/IP Ports of All SAP Products* at: <https://help.sap.com/viewer/ports>.

Ports listed with the default value *Not active* in this document are not configured.

**⚠ Caution**

In a high-availability system, you have to configure the firewall on **all** cluster nodes.

## Prerequisites

You turn on the [disabled firewall \[page 67\]](#) as follows:

- Open Windows PowerShell in elevated mode, and enter the following command:  
`Set-NetFirewallProfile "public","domain","private" -enabled true`
- You turn on the disabled firewall as follows:  
Open Windows PowerShell in elevated mode, and enter the following command:  
`Set-NetFirewallProfile "public","domain","private" -enabled true`

## Procedure

This procedure provides an example how to set *Inbound Rules* for the ports of an ABAP server that was installed with the following settings:

<i>Instance number</i>	00
<i>Port type</i>	TCP
<i>Ports</i>	3200, 3300, 4800, 8000, 3600, 50013, 1433, 1434

- Open Windows PowerShell in elevated mode, and enter the following command:  
`New-NetFirewallRule -DisplayName "SAP ABAP Server 00" -Direction Inbound -Protocol TCP -LocalPort 3200,3300,4800,8000,3600,50013,1433,1434 -Action Allow`
- You turn on the disabled firewall as follows:  
Open Windows PowerShell in elevated mode, and enter the following command:  
`Set-NetFirewallProfile "public","domain","private" -enabled true`

**i Note**

If you want to use, for example, a different IP scope for port 50013, which is used by the connection SAP Start Service – SAP Management Console, you can restrict the IP access to a small number of SAP administrators. Then delete this port from the SAP ABAP Server 00 rule and create a new rule for port 50013 with a more restrictive scope.

## 11.8 SAP System Security on Windows

In a standard SAP system installation, the software provisioning manager automatically performs all steps relevant for security. Although the software provisioning manager makes sure that the system is protected against unauthorized access, you must still check that no security breaches can occur.

For central and straightforward administration of the SAP system, you have to install distributed SAP systems with multiple application servers in a Windows **domain**. This section describes the user accounts and groups that the software provisioning manager creates during a domain installation and shows how these are related to the SAP directories.

### User Accounts

The software provisioning manager creates the following accounts for SAP system administration:

User account	Description
<sapsid>adm	This is the SAP system administrator account that enables interactive administration of the system.
SAPService<SAPSID>	<p>This is the user account that is required to start the SAP system. It has the local user right to log on as a service.</p> <p>The advantage of the additional SAPService&lt;SAPSID&gt; account is that it does not allow interactive logon, which prevents abuse of the account. Therefore, you do not need to set an expiration date for the password and you do not have to set the option <i>user must change password at next logon</i>.</p>
sapadm	<p>This is the user for the SAP Host Agent. By default it is a local user and not a member of the local Administrators group. You can change this user into a domain user on the <i>Parameter Summary</i> screen. For security reasons, however, SAP strongly recommends to create this user as a local user.</p> <p>The SAP Host Agent contains all of the required elements for centrally monitoring any host with the Alert Monitor or the SAP NetWeaver Administrator.</p>

### Domain and Local Groups

The only function of a domain group is to group users at the domain level so that they can be placed in the appropriate local groups.

Only local groups are created and maintained on each local host. A local group can only be given permissions and rights to the system where it is located. The system is part of a particular domain, and the local group can contain users and domain (global) groups from this domain.

During a domain installation, the software provisioning manager creates the following domain and local groups:

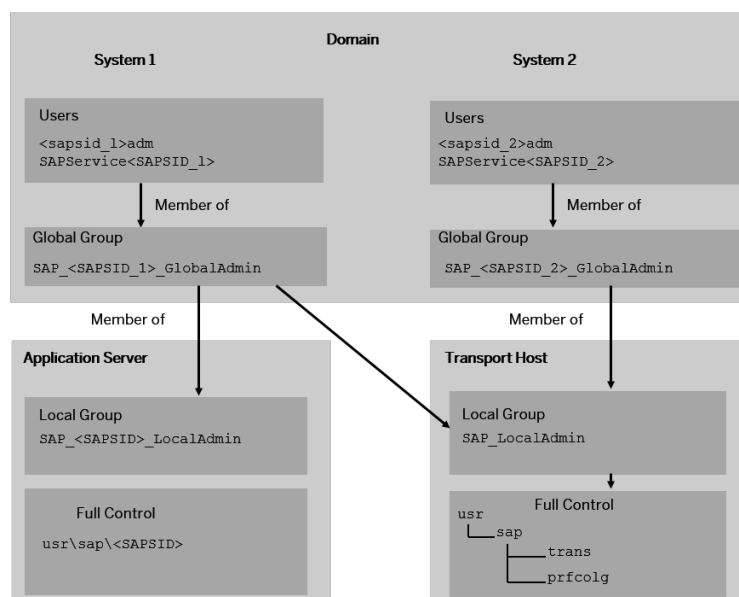
Group	Description
SAP_<SAPSID>_GlobalAdmin	This domain (global) group is a domain-level SAP administration group for organizing SAP system administrators.

Group	Description
SAP_SAP_GlobalAdmin	This domain group for the SAP Host Agent is only created if you create the SAP Host Agent user <code>sapadm</code> as a domain user.
SAP_<SAPSID>_LocalAdmin	This local group is created on each host.
SAP_SAP_LocalAdmin	If you create the SAP Host Agent user as domain user, the group <code>SAP_SAP_LocalAdmin</code> is also created.
SAP_LocalAdmin	This local group is created on all hosts, but is particularly important for the transport host. Members of the group have full control over the transport directory ( <code>\usr\sap\trans</code> ) that allows transports to take place between systems.

## SAP Directories

The software provisioning manager protects the SAP directories under `\usr\sap\<SAPSID>` by only granting the group `SAP_<SAPSID>_LocalAdmin` full control over these directories.

The following graphic illustrates the users and groups that are created by the software provisioning manager for the `<sapsid>adm` and `SAPService<SAPSID>` users in a system infrastructure consisting of two SAP systems.



User Groups and Accounts

## Note

An access control list (ACL) controls access to SAP system objects. For maximum security in the SAP system, only the following are members of **all** SAP system object ACLs:

- Local group `SAP_<SAPSID>_LocalAdmin`
- Group Administrators
- User `SYSTEM`

## More Information

[Automatic Creation of Accounts and Groups \[page 173\]](#)

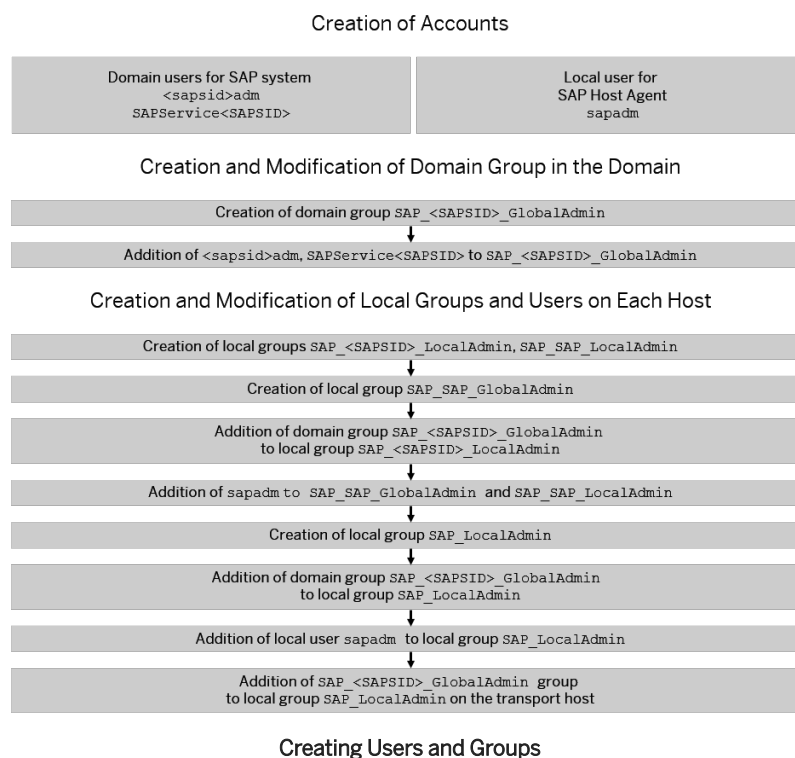
## 11.9 Automatic Creation of Accounts and Groups

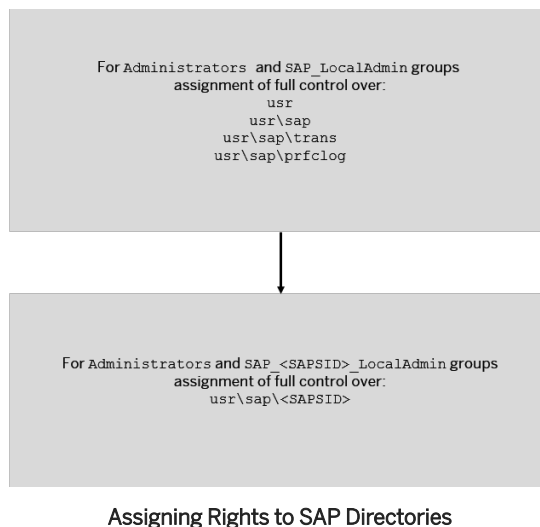
The software provisioning manager automatically creates the accounts and groups required for the secure operation of the SAP system with Windows during the installation, as described in [SAP System Security on Windows \[page 171\]](#).

### Features

The following figures show the steps that the software provisioning manager performs to create the users and groups and assign the required rights to SAP directories.

The first figure shows the users that are created during a domain installation, with the SAP Host Agent operating system users being local users.





## 11.10 Uninstalling an SAP System or Single Instances

This section describes how to uninstall a complete SAP system or single SAP instances with the *Uninstall* option of the software provisioning manager.

### Prerequisites

- You have installed your SAP system with standard SAP tools according to the installation documentation.
- You are logged on with a user account that has the required authorization to run the software provisioning manager and the SAP system. For more information, see [Required User Authorization for Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 70\]](#).

#### ⚠ Caution

Do **not** use the `<sapsid>adm` user to delete the SAP system.

- Make sure that the SAP system, or single instance, or standalone engine, or optional standalone unit to be deleted is down and that you are not logged on as one of the SAP system users. Also check that all SAP-related processes are stopped. If there is a lock on one of the SAP system objects, the uninstall fails.

#### i Note

You do not have to stop the SAP Host Agent. The SAP Host Agent is stopped automatically during the uninstall process.


- When starting the uninstall, make sure that there are no SAP system user sessions still open.

## Context


Note the following when deleting an SAP system or single instances:

- You cannot delete an SAP system remotely.
- If you delete network-wide users, groups or service entries in an environment with Network Information System (NIS), other SAP installations might also be affected. Make sure that the users, groups, and service entries to be deleted are no longer required.
- During the uninstall process, all file systems and subdirectories of the selected SAP system or single instance are deleted. Before you start uninstalling, check that you have saved a copy of all files and directories that you want to keep to a secure location.
- The uninstall process is designed to remove as much as possible of the SAP system to be deleted. If an item cannot be removed, a message informs you that you have to remove this item manually. You can do this either at once or after the uninstall process has finished. As soon as you confirm the message, the uninstall process continues.
- If you uninstall an SAP instance and you plan to install another SAP instance with the same System ID, first reboot the Windows host to clear all user cached information. For more information, see SAP Note [2296310](#).

## Procedure

1. Start the software provisioning manager as described in [Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 95\]](#).
2. On the [Welcome](#) screen, choose:  

3. Follow the instructions on the software provisioning manager screens to delete a complete SAP system or single instances.



### Note

To find more information on each parameter during the [Define Parameters](#) phase, position the cursor on the required parameter input field, and choose either  or the [HELP](#) tab. Then the available help text is displayed in the [HELP](#) tab.

The following table provides information about deleting a complete system or single instances with the software provisioning manager.

Deletion of	Remarks
Standard system	You can delete a standard system (where all instances except the database instance reside on the same host) in one software provisioning manager run.

Deletion of	Remarks
Distributed or high-availability system	<p>If you want to delete a distributed or high-availability system, you have to run the software provisioning manager to delete the required instances <b>locally</b> on each of the hosts belonging to the SAP system in the following sequence:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid orange; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>⚠ Caution</b></p> <p>Only select checkbox <i>Uninstall all instances of the SAP system from this host</i> when removing the last remaining instance of the SAP system. Otherwise the contents of mounted global directories under <code>\&lt;sapglobalhost&gt;\&lt;sapmnt&gt;\&lt;SAPSID&gt;</code> / such as instance profiles and kernel executables, are also deleted.</p> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Additional application server instances, if there are any</li> <li>2. Primary application server instance If the software provisioning manager stops responding while trying to delete the primary application server instance, close the software provisioning manager with <i>Cancel</i> and <i>Exit</i>. Log off and log on again. To complete the uninstall process of the primary application server instance, restart the software provisioning manager.</li> <li>3. Database instance Do <b>not</b> delete the SAP HANA database instance. However, you can delete the database clients and the database users on the SAP application servers.</li> <li>4. ABAP Central services instance (ASCS)</li> </ol>
Additional application server	If you want to delete additional application server instances of an existing SAP system, you have to run the software provisioning manager to delete them <b>locally</b> on each additional application server instance host.
Standalone SAP Host Agent	<p>The SAP Host Agent is automatically uninstalled from a host together with the last remaining SAP system instance.</p> <p>If you want to uninstall a <b>standalone</b> SAP Host Agent, deselect <i>Profiles Available</i> and select <i>Uninstall Standalone SAP Host Agent</i> on the <i>General SAP System Parameters</i> screen.</p>

4. When you have finished, delete the relevant directory structure on the global host.
5. Delete the local user group `SAP_<SAPSID>_LocalAdmin` manually as follows:
  - Open a PowerShell in elevated mode and enter the following command:  
`net localgroup SAP_<SAPSID>_LocalAdmin /delete`
6. If required, you can delete the directory `\usr\sap\trans` and its contents manually.  
The software provisioning manager does not delete `\usr\sap\trans` because it might be shared.
7. To remove obsolete SLD data, see the following document: <https://wiki.scn.sap.com/wiki/display/SL/More+on+System+Landscape+Directory>  *How-to Manage House-Cleaning in the System Landscape Directory - Duplicate System Entries* 



## 11.11 Stub Installation of an SAP ABAP Application Server Instance

The Stub installation sets up an application server instance structure without SAP HANA database-specific activities such as database user creation, or ABAP report invocations.

### Prerequisites

The ABAP Central Services (ASCS) instance must already exist.

### Context

You can use this option as described in section ► *Preparation* ► *System Move: Preparing Target System Landscape* of the documentation *Database Migration Option: Target Database SAP HANA (SUM 2.0 SP<17 or Higher>)* at <https://support.sap.com/sltoolset> ► ► *System Maintenance* ► *Database Migration Option (DMO) with SUM 2.0* ► *Guides for DMO with SUM 2.0 SP <17 or Higher>* ► *User Guides for System Maintenance Tools* ► *Database Migration Option of Software Update Manager 2.0* ► *SAP HANA DB*.

### Procedure

1. You ensure that the installation host meets the [Hardware and Software Requirements \[page 39\]](#) for the application server instance to be installed.
2. You plan the [SAP System Parameters \[page 48\]](#) for the application server instance to be installed.
3. You [perform basic Windows preparation steps \[page 68\]](#).
4. You ensure the [Required User Authorization for Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 70\]](#)
5. You [download and extract the Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 \[page 79\]](#) and [download the required SAP Kernel Archives \[page 80\]](#) for the Primary Application Server instance and the SAP HANA database client.
6. You ensure the [Prerequisites for Running Software Provisioning Manager \[page 93\]](#).
7. You [start Software Provisioning Manager \[page 95\]](#) and run option ► ► *SAP AS ABAP Stub Installation for System Move* ► *SAP HANA Database* ► *SAP S/4HANA <Server | Foundation><Release> Stub Primary Application Server Instance*.

This option installs the Primary Application Server instance and the SAP HANA database client. However, the SAP HANA database client is not configured, because no database-related information is available as this is not a full system installation, but only a stub installation.

## Next Steps

Follow the instructions in section [Preparation](#) > [System Move: Preparing Target System Landscape](#) of the documentation *Database Migration Option: Target Database SAP HANA SUM 2.0 SP<17 or Higher>* at <https://support.sap.com/sltoolset> > [System Maintenance](#) > [Database Migration Option \(DMO\) with SUM 2.0](#) > [Guides for DMO with SUM 2.0 SP <17 or Higher>](#) > [User Guides for System Maintenance Tools](#) > [Database Migration Option of Software Update Manager 2.0](#) > [SAP HANA DB](#)

# 12 Target System Installation - High Availability with Microsoft Failover Clustering

## 12.1 High Availability with Microsoft Failover Clustering

You can install a high-availability SAP system with [Microsoft Failover Clustering](#). The Failover Clustering software improves the availability of the system and protects it against failure and unplanned downtime, enabling 24-hour operation, 365 days a year.

With high availability, you enable critical system components, known as “Single Points of Failure (SPOFs)”, to be automatically switched from one machine to the other, if hardware or software problems arise on one machine. With the help of this switchover – or failover – the system can continue functioning.

Apart from enabling failover when hardware problems occur, you can also use Failover Clustering to avoid downtime when you perform essential system maintenance. If you need to maintain one host (failover cluster node), you can deliberately switch the cluster resources to the other host (failover cluster node) and temporarily operate it there while maintenance is in progress. When maintenance work is finished, you can easily move the resources back to their original node and continue operating them there.

When you are setting up the SAP system with Microsoft Failover Clustering, you combine standard installation steps, described earlier in this documentation, with cluster-specific steps, described here.

You have the following options to install a high-availability SAP system with Microsoft Failover Clustering:

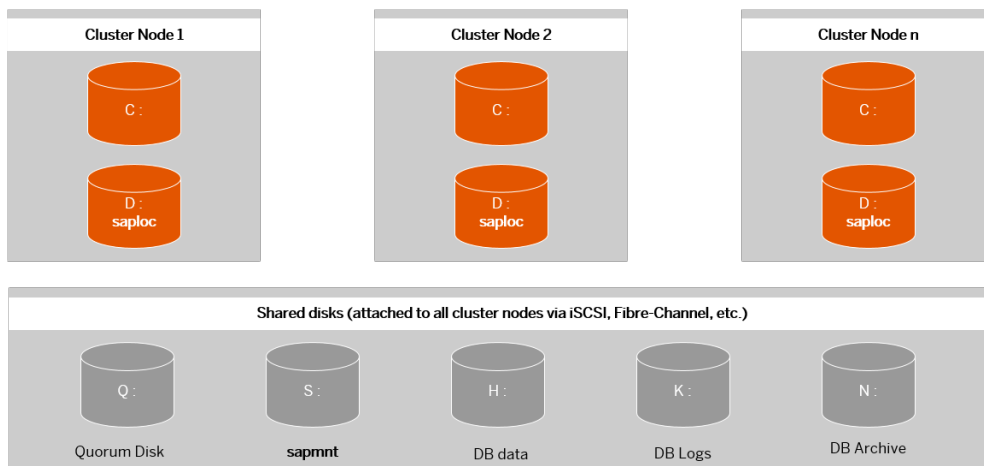
- You install the SAP related parts (for example: ASCS instance, additional standalone Gateways, Web Dispatcher instance, etc.) in **one** Microsoft Failover Cluster.
- You install the SAP related parts (for example: ASCS instance, additional standalone Gateways, Web Dispatcher instance, etc.) in **two** Microsoft Failover Clusters.

You have the following options to install a Microsoft Failover Cluster:

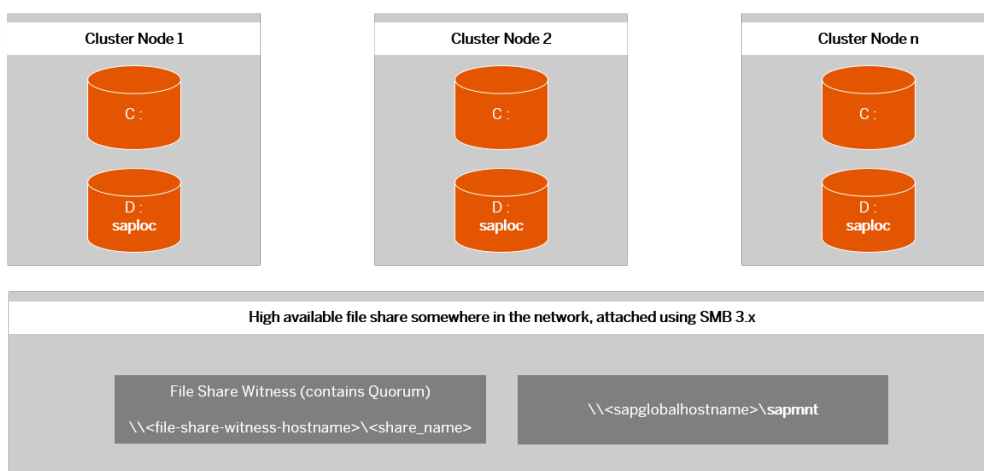
- CSD (Cluster Shared Disks)
  - A Failover Cluster which contains shared disks.  
A database can be optionally installed in this Cluster in its own cluster group.
- FSC (File Share Cluster)
  - A Failover Cluster which does not contain shared disks and uses a remote file share instead.  
A database cannot be installed in this cluster because databases need shared disks. One exception: MS SQL using “AlwaysOn” option.

- **i Note**

The user starting the software provisioning manager must have full access rights on the file share \\<sapglobalhost>\sapmnt.



Landscape of a Cluster using Shared Disks



Landscape of a File Share Cluster

You have the following options to install the database instance with a high-availability SAP system:

- You install the database instance on a different host or cluster on either the same or a different operating system.
- You use third-party high-availability solutions to improve the availability of your database instance.

## Important Information

To install a new SAP system with Microsoft Failover Clustering, you have to perform a number of extra steps specially required for the cluster and configure the SAP system so that it can take advantage of the cluster functionality:

- Since the correct configuration of network addresses is absolutely essential for the cluster to function properly, you have to perform a number of additional steps that are necessary to set up and check address resolution.
- Since the cluster hardware has at least two nodes that have access to all local and shared storage devices, you have to install some components on all nodes and pay attention to special rules for distributing components to local disks, shared disks, or external file shares.

- You have to install and configure the ASCS instance to run on two cluster nodes in one Microsoft Failover Cluster.

### i Note

If you have an existing SAP system and plan to migrate to a failover cluster with new hardware, you install the SAP system using a **system copy**.

For more information about the system copy, see the *System Copy Guide* for your SAP system at:

<http://support.sap.com/sltoolset> ► *System Provisioning* ► *System Copy Option* ►

The system copy guide does **not** include the cluster-specific information, which is described here.

## Terminology

- In this documentation the hosts in a Microsoft Failover Cluster are referred to as first cluster node and additional cluster node(s):
  - The **first** cluster node is the cluster node where you perform the general installation of an SAP system, for example where the database or ASCS instance is to be installed.
  - The **additional** cluster node is the node where you configure the already installed SAP instances to run in Microsoft Failover Clustering.

## 12.1.1 Checklist for a High-Availability System

This section includes the steps that you have to perform for your SAP system using Microsoft Failover Clustering. Detailed information about the steps is available in the relevant section.

## Planning

1. You check that you have completed the same [planning activities \[page 27\]](#) as for a non-HA system, including the [hardware and software requirements \[page 39\]](#).
2. You decide how to [set up your SAP system components in an HA configuration \[page 183\]](#).
3. You decide how to [distribute SAP system components to disks for HA \[page 193\]](#).
4. You read [Directories in an HA Configuration \[page 195\]](#).
5. You read [IP Addresses in an HA Configuration \[page 196\]](#).
6. You [obtain IP addresses for HA \[page 199\]](#).

### i Note

The user starting the software provisioning manager must have full access rights on the file share \<sapglobalhost>\sapmnt.

## Preparation

1. You check that you have completed the same [preparations \[page 65\]](#) as for a non-HA system.
2. To make sure that all preparation steps have been correctly performed, check that the storage resources are available to all cluster nodes. If you want to run the CSD option, check if you can move the disk resources from one cluster node to another so that they are accessible from a single node at any time. If you want to run the FSC option, check if the external file share is accessible by your installation user from all cluster nodes.

## Installation

1. You make sure that:
  1. You are logged on as a domain administrator user or a domain user, who has the necessary rights on all cluster nodes. For a list of the required permissions, see [Performing a Domain Installation without being a Domain Administrator \[page 162\]](#).

### i Note

In Failover Cluster configurations, make sure that the account of the cluster (<clustername>\$) has full rights in the OU (Organizational Unit) on which your Domain administrator configures the SAP users and the SAP group.

If these rights are missing, the software provisioning manager will try to add the cluster network name resource to the SAP cluster group. However, because the cluster itself has no rights to add the related computer object (CNO) to the OU, the software provisioning manager will stop and show the error message `<access denied>`.

2. You do **not** use the user <sapsid>adm unless specified.
  3. If you are prompted during the installation process, log off and log on again.
2. You [configure the first cluster node \[page 202\]](#).
  3. You [run the software provisioning manager on the first cluster node to install the database instance \[page 204\]](#).
  4. You [configure the additional cluster node \[page 205\]](#).
  5. You [install the primary application server instance \[page 206\]](#).
  6. You [install at least one additional application server instance \[page 207\]](#).

## Post-Installation

1. You install the permanent SAP licenses on all cluster nodes.
2. You perform the post-installation checks for the enqueue replication server.
3. You perform the same [post-installation steps \[page 116\]](#) as for a non-HA system.

## Additional Information

- [Moving Cluster Groups, or Services and Applications, or Roles \[page 208\]](#)
- [Starting and Stopping the SAP System in a HA Configuration \[page 209\]](#).

### 12.1.2 Planning

The following sections provide information about how to plan the installation of the SAP system for Microsoft Failover Clustering. For a complete list of all steps, see section *Planning* in the [Installation Checklist for a High-Availability System \[page 181\]](#).

#### 12.1.2.1 System Configuration with Microsoft Failover Clustering

The following chapters provide information about the configuration of your SAP system with Microsoft Failover Clustering. It describes the components you have to install for an SAP system running in a Microsoft Failover Cluster, and how to distribute them on the specific host. For more information, see:

- [SAP System Components in a Microsoft Failover Cluster \[page 183\]](#)
- [Enqueue Replication Server in a Microsoft Failover Cluster \[page 191\]](#)

##### 12.1.2.1.1 SAP System Components in a Microsoft Failover Cluster

In a Microsoft Failover Cluster configuration, you have the following mandatory components for your SAP system:

SAP System Components in an Failover Cluster Configuration

Component	Number of Components per SAP System	Single Point of Failure
ASCS instance (message services and enqueue services)	1	yes
Application server instance (primary application server, additional application server)	1-<n>	no

- To protect the SPOFs (ASCS instance and database instance), you have to use Microsoft Failover Clustering.  
If a hardware or software problem occurs on the first cluster node, the clustered ASCS instance automatically fails over to another node.

If you need to maintain the cluster node where the ASCS instance is running, you can switch this instance to another node. When maintenance work is finished, you move the ASCS instance back to the original node.

- To protect system components that are non-SPOFs, for example application servers, you have to install them as multiple components. In this case, you must install at least two application servers (the primary application server instance and one additional application server instance) on two different hosts. You have the following options:
  - You install the primary application server and the additional application server instance on the cluster nodes of a Microsoft Failover Cluster. You install them on a **local** disk or external file share. Any additional application server instances are installed on hosts outside of the Microsoft failover cluster. If you have to maintain a cluster node, you have to stop the primary application server or the additional application server instance on that node. When you have finished maintenance, you restart the instances.

#### **i Note**

If you install the primary application server and the additional application server instance on the cluster nodes, you must perform the hardware sizing for the failover cluster host, as in this case the application server is always running on this host. This increases system load and might impact performance.

Note that, as usual in a failover cluster setup, the ASCS instance also switch to run on the failover cluster host in the event of failover, which temporarily also increases system load.

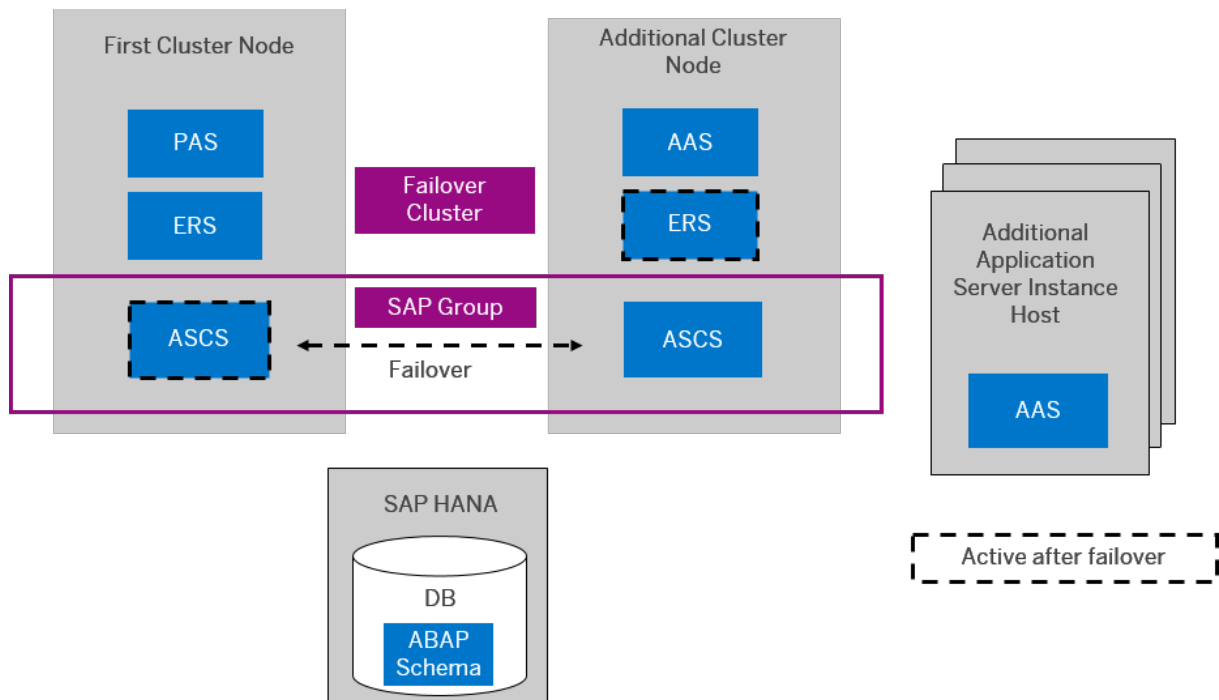
- You install the primary application server and all additional application server instances on hosts, which are not part of a Microsoft Failover Cluster.

## **SAP System Components in One Microsoft Failover Cluster**

The following figures show examples for the installation of SPOFs and non-SPOFs of an SAP system in one Microsoft Failover Cluster with two nodes.

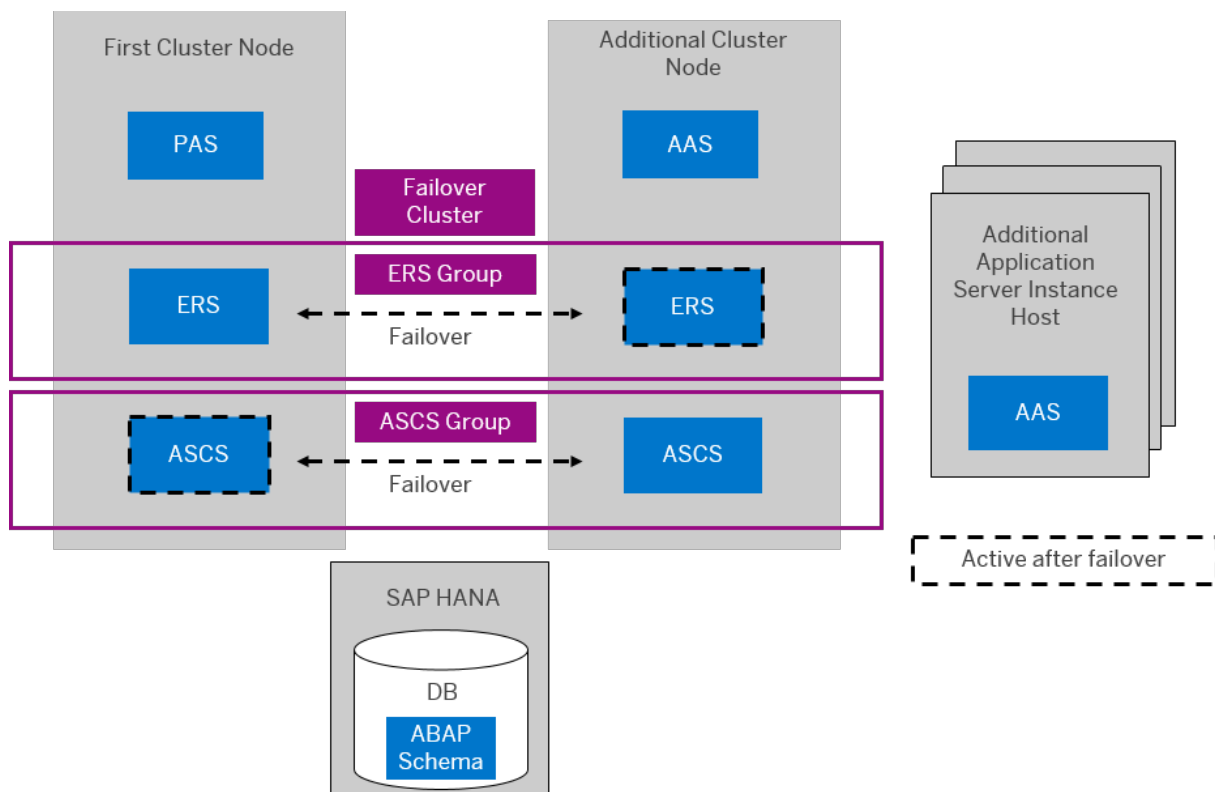
The first figure shows an Microsoft Failover Cluster configuration where the non-SPOFs components (primary application server instance, additional application server instance) are installed locally on the cluster nodes. Any additional application server instances are installed outside the Microsoft Failover Cluster on separate hosts.





PAS = Primary Application Server Instance      ERS = Enqueue Replication Server Instance  
AAS = Additional Application Server Instance      ASCS = ABAP Central Services Instance  
DB = Database Instance

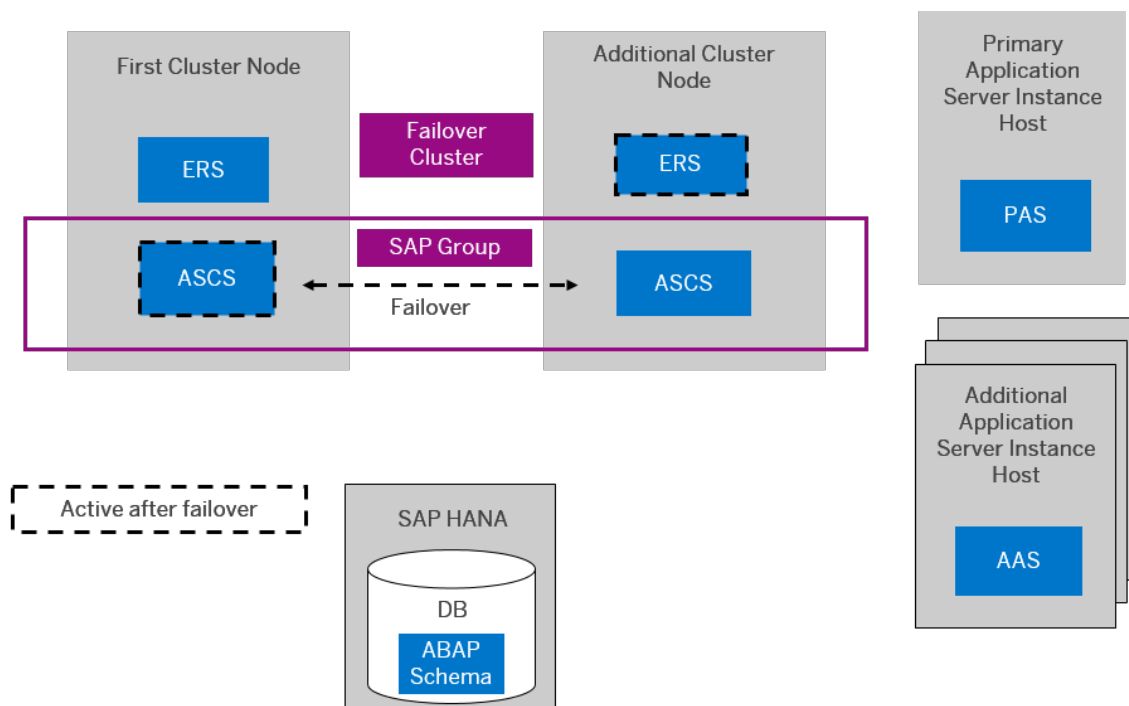
ABAP System Based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1



PAS = Primary Application Server Instance      ERS = Enqueue Replication Server Instance  
 AAS = Additional Application Server Instance      ASCS = ABAP Central Services Instance  
 DB = Database Instance

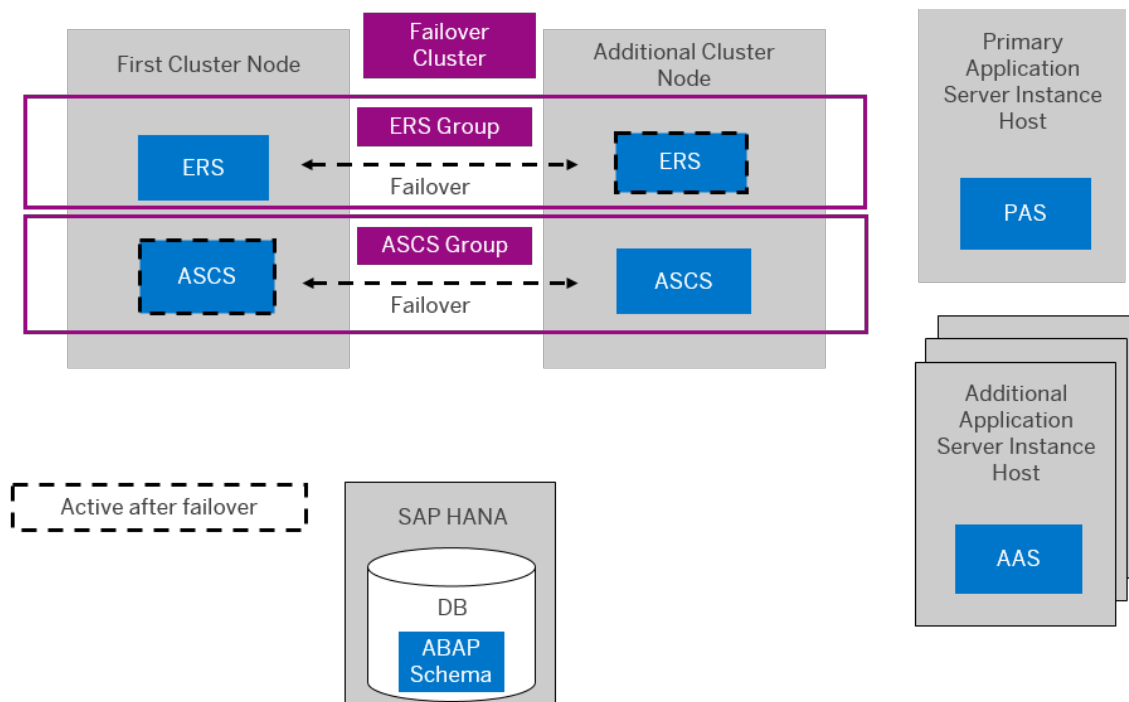
#### ABAP System Based on ABAP Platform 1809 or higher

The following figure shows an HA configuration, where the non-SPOFs components (primary application server instance, additional application server instance) are installed on separate hosts that are not part of the failover cluster.



PAS = Primary Application Server Instance      ERS = Enqueue Replication Server Instance  
AAS = Additional Application Server Instance      ASCS = ABAP Central Services Instance  
DB = Database Instance

#### ABAP System Based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1



PAS = Primary Application Server Instance      ERS = Enqueue Replication Server Instance  
AAS = Additional Application Server Instance      ASCS = ABAP Central Services Instance  
DB = Database Instance

ABAP System Based on ABAP Platform 1809 or higher

## 12.1.2.1.2 Multiple SAP Systems In One Microsoft Failover Cluster

Before SAP NetWeaver 7.0, SAP only supported the installation of **one** clustered SAP system in **one** Microsoft Failover Cluster with two cluster nodes. The reason was that the cluster share `sapmnt` resource could only be assigned to **one** cluster group and could only point to one shared drive.

The solution was to rename the cluster share `sapmnt` resource into `sapmnt<SAPSID>`, and use junctions, which pointed to the local disk. This is no longer required.

### ⚠ Caution

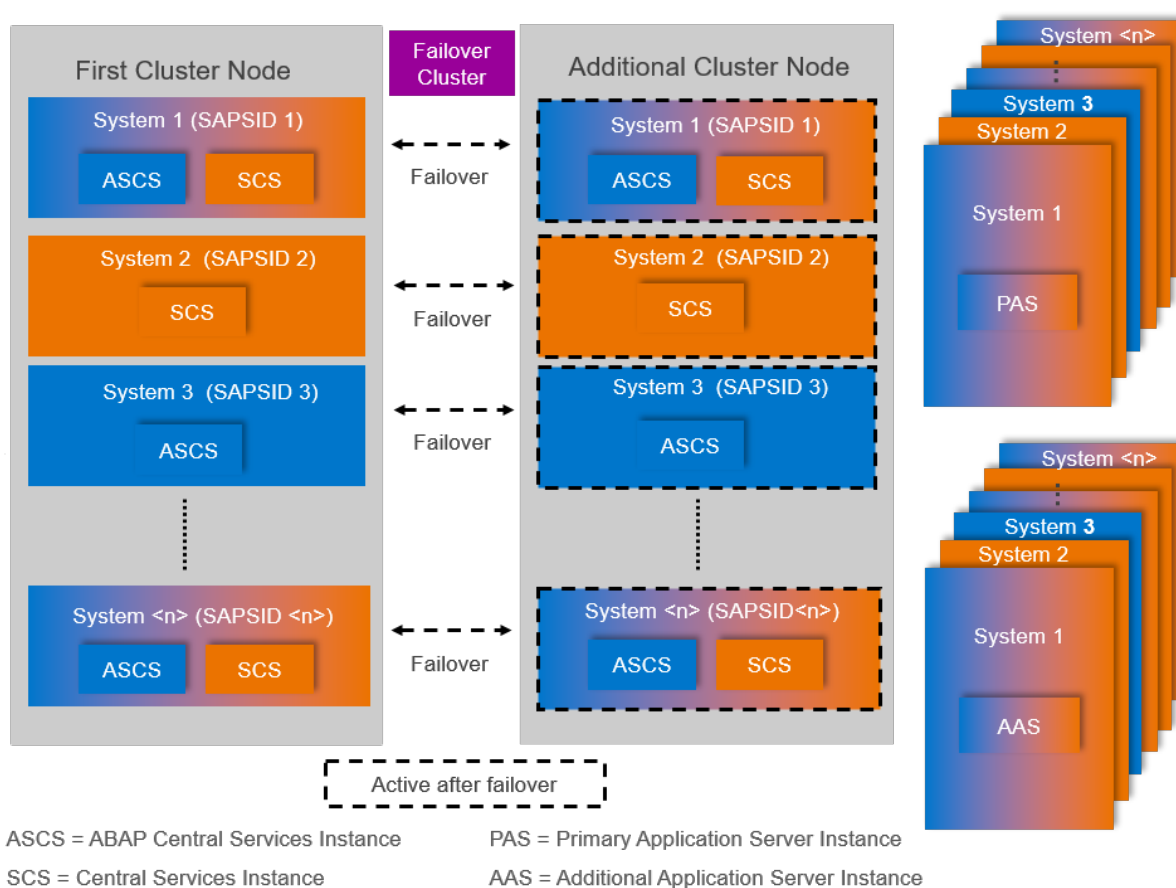
All local instances such as an enqueue replication server, primary or additional application server and the local part of the ASCS when you use a file share cluster are installed on the local disk where the `saploc` share is pointing to. Make sure that you have enough space on this local disk.

Every SAP system is placed in a separate cluster group with the unique name `SAP <SAPSID>`. Each SAP cluster group has its own IP address, network name, as well as the SAP service resource (or generic service resource), and the SAP instance resource. If you use the CSD option, the cluster group also contains a shared disk and a `sapmnt` share. In case of the FSC option, the group does not contain a shared drive and the `sapmnt` share is located on a file share.

If you have an HA configuration with three or more cluster nodes, the following restrictions apply:

- The ASCS instance must be configured to be able to perform a fail over between two cluster nodes in one Microsoft Failover Cluster.  
For more information, see SAP Note [1634991](#).
- If the database supports the installation on several cluster nodes, the database instance can be installed on more than two cluster nodes in one Microsoft Failover Cluster.

The following figure shows the installation of multiple SAP systems in one Microsoft Failover Cluster. For each SAP system you have to install one primary and at least one additional application server.



Multiple SAP Systems in one Microsoft Failover Cluster

### 12.1.2.1.3 Multiple SAP Systems In Multiple Microsoft Failover Clusters

Besides installing multiple SAP systems in one Microsoft Failover Cluster, you can also install multiple SAP systems in several Microsoft Failover Clusters with two or more cluster nodes.

For this failover cluster configuration, the following restrictions apply:

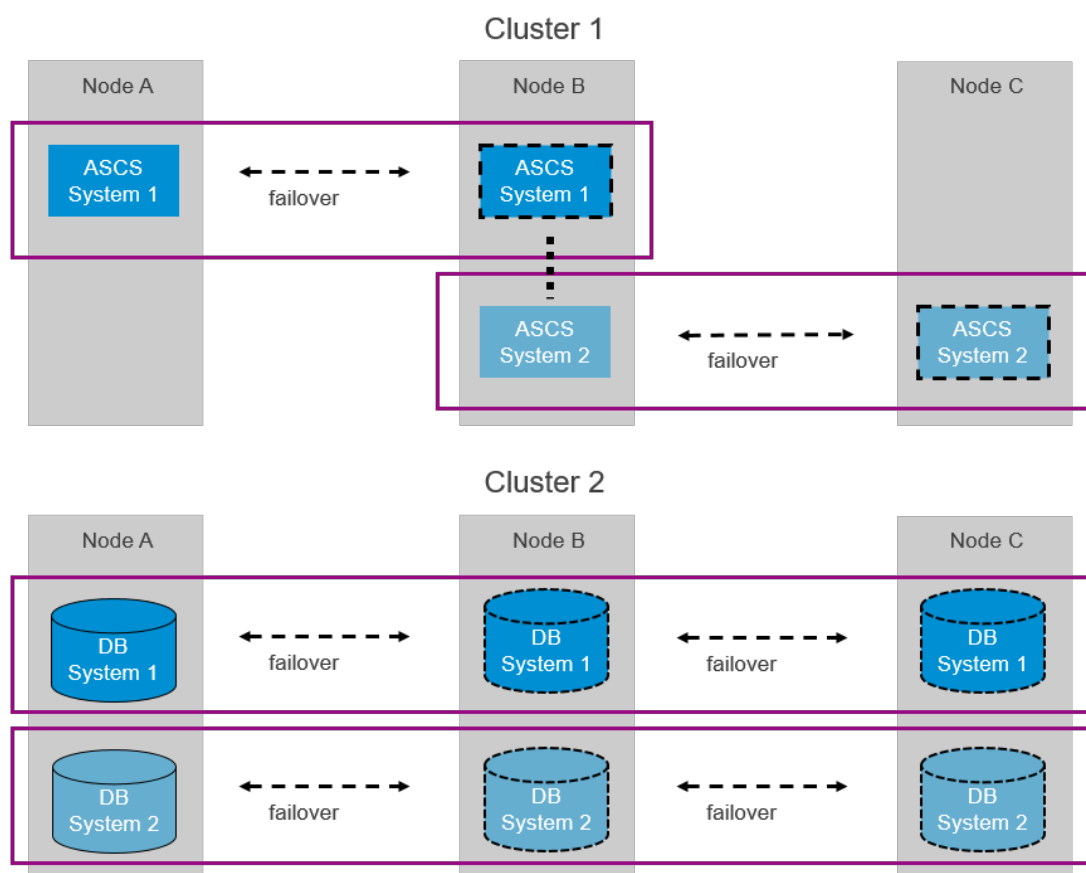
- The ASCS instance must be configured to run on two cluster nodes in one Microsoft Failover Cluster.  
For more information, see SAP Note [1634991](#).
- If the database supports the installation on several cluster nodes, the database instance can be installed on more than two cluster nodes in one Microsoft Failover Cluster.

The following figure shows the installation of multiple SAP systems in two Microsoft Failover Clusters with three cluster nodes, called Node A, B, and C. In this example, the ASCS instances are installed in the first Microsoft Failover Cluster, and the database instances for the two SAP systems are installed on the second Microsoft Failover Cluster. The application servers can be either installed on a local disk on the cluster nodes or outside the Microsoft Failover Cluster on separate hosts.

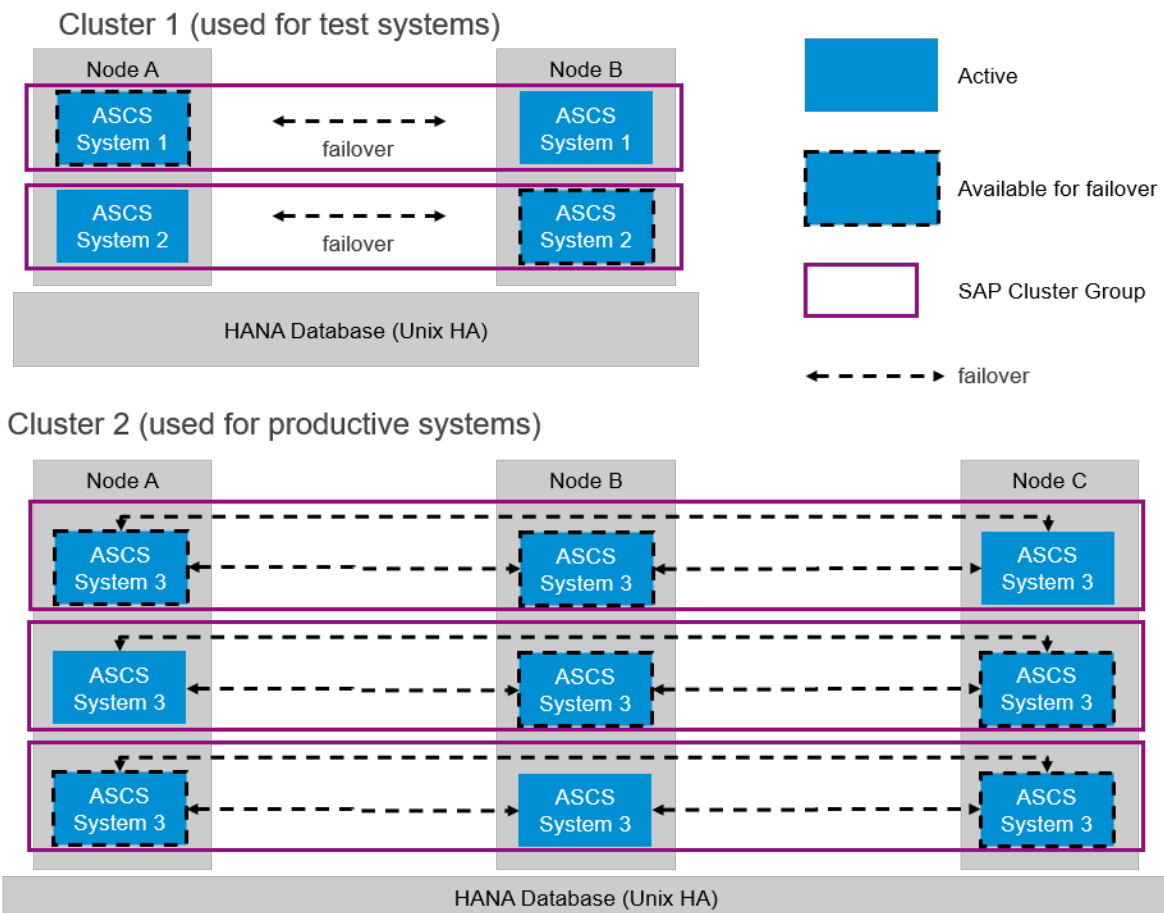
### Note

If you use an enqueue replication server, you must configure the enqueue replication server, and the ASCS instance on **two** nodes.

For more information, see SAP Note [1634991](#).



Multiple SAP Systems in Two Microsoft Failover Clusters for SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1



Multiple SAP Systems in Two Microsoft Failover Clusters for ABAP Platform 1809 or higher

#### 12.1.2.1.4 Enqueue Replication Server in a Microsoft Failover Cluster

The enqueue replication server contains a replica of the lock table (replication table) and is an essential component in a high-availability setup. It is installed on the two cluster nodes where the ASCS instance is installed and configured to run, even if you have more than two cluster nodes.

In normal operation the enqueue replication server is always active on the host where the ASCS instance is **not** running.

If an enqueue server in a Microsoft Failover Cluster with two nodes fails on the first cluster node, the enqueue server on the additional cluster node is started. It retrieves the data from the replication table on that node and writes it in its lock table. The enqueue replication server on the first cluster node then becomes inactive. If the first cluster node is available again, the enqueue replication server on the second cluster node becomes active again.

The following applies if Enqueue Replicator 2 is used: If an enqueue server in a Microsoft Failover Cluster with two nodes fails on the first cluster node, the enqueue server on the additional cluster node is started. It retrieves the data from the Enqueue Replicator 2 on that node and writes it in its lock table. If the first cluster node is available again, the enqueue replication server must be moved by the Failover Cluster to the first cluster node to guarantee that both will not remain on one cluster node if at least on additional cluster node is available for operations. With this operations model, more than two cluster nodes are possible.

The following figure shows the enqueue replication server mechanism in an Microsoft failover cluster configuration with two nodes:

## i Note

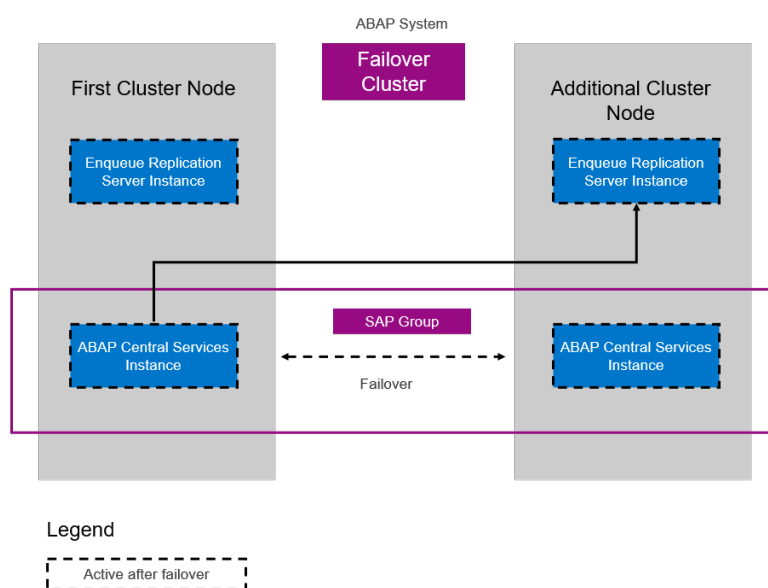
**New “Standalone Enqueue Server 2” and “Enqueue Replicator” versus classic “Standalone Enqueue Server” and “Enqueue Replication Server” :**

- **SAP systems based on ABAP Platform 1809 or higher:** By default, the new Standalone Enqueue Server 2 and Enqueue Replicator 2 are installed. From a Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 perspective the “Standalone Enqueue Server 2” and “Enqueue Replicator 2” are installed the same way as the classic “Standalone Enqueue Server” and “Enqueue Replicator”.

For more information, see the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at ► [SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP](#) ► [Components of SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP](#) ► [Standalone Enqueue Server 2](#) ►.

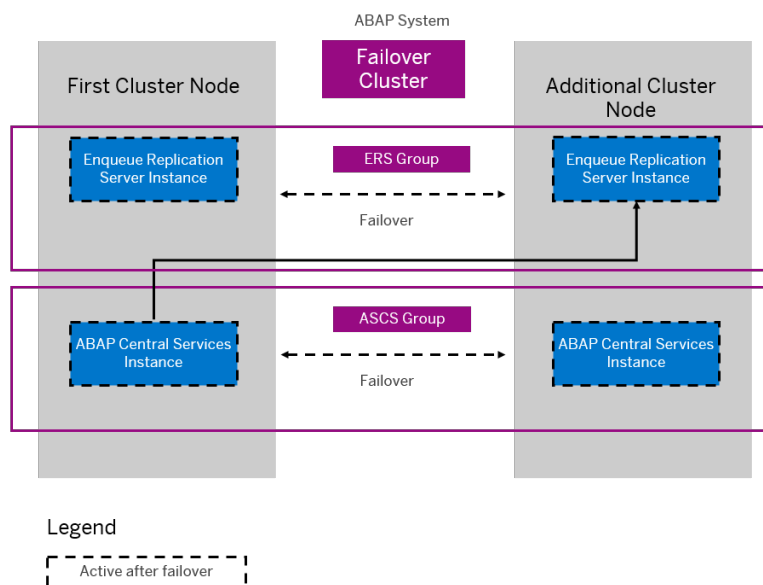
- **SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (based on SAP NetWeaver 7.5):** The classic “standalone enqueue server” and “enqueue replication server” are installed by default. You **cannot** switch to “standalone enqueue server 2” and “enqueue replicator” after the system installation has completed.

Since - from a Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 perspective - the “Enqueue Replicator 2” is installed with the ERS instance the same way as the classic “Enqueue Replication Server”, both are abbreviated as “ERS instance” in this documentation.



**Enqueue Replication Server Mechanism on One Microsoft Failover Cluster with Two Nodes for SAP Systems Based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1**





Enqueue Replication Server Mechanism on One Microsoft Failover Cluster with Two Nodes for SAP Systems Based on ABAP Platform 1809 or higher

## 12.1.2.2 Distribution of SAP System Components to Disks for Failover Clustering

When planning the Microsoft Failover Cluster installation, keep in mind that the cluster hardware uses different storage resources:

- Local Resources
  - Local disks that are connected directly to the cluster nodes
- Shared Storage Resources
  - Shared disks that can be accessed by all cluster nodes via a shared interconnect if CSD option is used

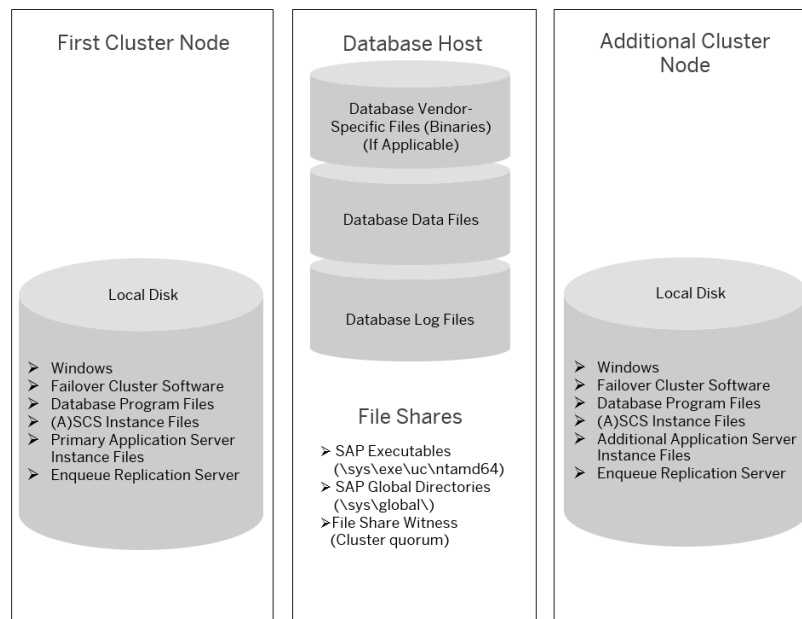
### Note

Shared disk is a synonym for the cluster *Resource type* `Physical disk`.

- An external file share if the FSC option is used

You need to install the SAP system components in both the following ways:

- Separately on all cluster nodes to use the local storage on each node
- You have two options to distribute the shared files which are used by all cluster nodes:
  - You install the following on **different** shared disks:
    - ASCS instance
    - Single quorum device, if used
  - On an external file share that is made accessible to all cluster nodes:
    - All database files are installed on an external host, or an additional cluster in this scenario
    - If a quorum is used, it is configured as a file share quorum on the file share host



Distribution of SAP System Components for an SAP System in a Failover Cluster with an External File Share (FSC)

## Quorum Configurations on Windows

On Windows, there are several quorum configurations available. The configuration to use mainly depends on the cluster setup, such as the number of cluster nodes, the storage type (single or distributed), the distribution to shared disk and file share, and the number of data centers. For more information, see the Windows documentation.

If the number of cluster nodes is odd, you need no quorum. For a cluster with an even number of nodes you can configure a disk quorum, a file share quorum, or a cloud quorum.

The default quorum configuration is called *Node and Disk Majority* for clusters with more than two nodes.

With a quorum configuration, each node and the witness maintain its own copy of the cluster configuration data. This ensures that the cluster configuration is kept running even if the active node fails or is offline.

### ⚠ Caution

If you do not use the default quorum configuration for your operating system, contact your hardware partner, who can help you to analyze your needs and set up your cluster model. SAP supports these configurations if they are part of a cluster solution offered by your Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM), or Independent Hardware Vendor (IHV).

## Geographically Dispersed Cluster (Geospan)

The standard cluster configuration consists of two cluster nodes and a shared storage with all technical components located in the same data center. In a geographically dispersed cluster, also known as a geospan cluster, the cluster nodes are distributed across at least two data centers to avoid the full outage of a data center in the event of disaster.

A geospan configuration requires a more sophisticated storage architecture since a standard shared storage can only be located in one data center and might therefore be a single point of failure (SPOF). To prevent the disk storage becoming a SPOF, you have to configure the storage system in each data center and to replicate its content to the storage system of the other data center.

Replication can either be synchronous or asynchronous, depending on the:

- Functionality of the storage subsystem
- Acceptable amount of data loss during a failover
- Physical layout of the storage area network  
This includes the distance between the storage systems, signal latency, capacity, and speed of the network connection.
- Customer budget

### 12.1.2.3 Directories in a Microsoft Failover Cluster Configuration


The following tables show the directories where the main software components for a high-availability system are stored:

Directories on Local Disks on Cluster Nodes

Component	Default Directory
A supported <a href="#">operating system</a> [page 41]	%windir%
Microsoft Failover Clustering software	%windir%\Cluster
Only if FSC option is used: ASCS instance	<Local_Drive>:\usr\sap\<SAPSID>\ASCS<Instance_Number>
Application server	<Local_Drive>:\usr\sap\<SAPSID>\<Instance>
Enqueue replication server	<Local_Drive>:\usr\sap\<SAPSID>\ERS<Instance_Number>
Diagnostics Agent (optional)	<Local_Drive>:\usr\sap\<DASID>\SMDA<Instance_Number>
SAP Host Agent	%Program Files%\SAP\hostctrl

Directories on Shared Disks

Component	Default Directory
Cluster <a href="#">quorum resource</a> (if used)	<Drive>:\Cluster

Component	Default Directory
SAP global and instance directories	<Drive>:\usr\sap ...
<p>During the installation of an SAP system distributed over several hosts, you can now specify that the SAP Global directories are installed on a host different from the ASCS instance host. For more information, see SAP Note <a href="#">3349121</a> .</p>	

## 12.1.2.4 Hostnames in a Failover Cluster Configuration

A part of the installation process that is unique to Microsoft Failover Clustering is the configuration of host names and IP addresses in the network. This is a particularly important task because the addressing plays a key role in the switchover procedure. Addressing must be set up correctly so that the system can take advantage of the cluster functionality and switch between nodes when hardware problems arise.

This section explains the different types of IP addresses and their function in the switchover mechanism of **one** Microsoft Failover Cluster with **two** cluster nodes.

### Types of IP Addresses

In a proper configured cluster with at least two nodes, there are at least seven IP addresses and corresponding host names for your SAP system. You have two IP addresses for each cluster node, one IP address for the cluster, one address for the SAP cluster group and one for the database cluster group.

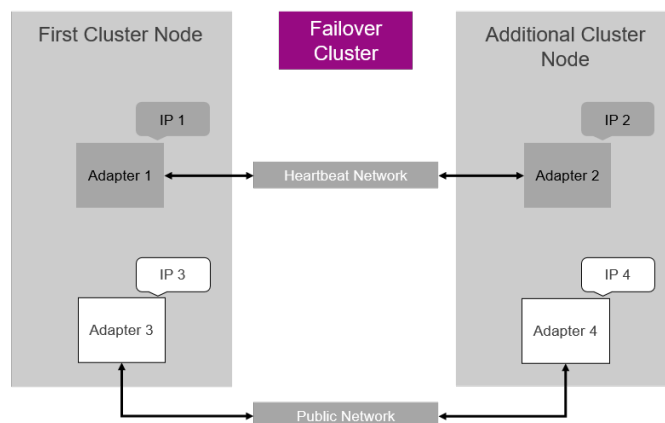
Some of the addresses are assigned to the **network adapters** (network interface card, NIC) whereas others are virtual IP addresses that are assigned to the **cluster groups**.

### Physical IP Addresses Assigned to Network Adapters

A Microsoft Failover Cluster configuration has at least two networks:

- A public network that is used for the communication between the primary application server, additional application servers, and the LAN.
- A private network that is used internally for communication between the nodes of the cluster, also called heartbeat.

The following figure shows a Microsoft Failover Cluster with two nodes and illustrates the adapters required for the public and private networks, and their corresponding physical IP addresses. A physical IP address, in contrast to a virtual one, is stationary and permanently mapped to the same adapter.



Adapters and IP Addresses Required for Public and Private Networks in an Microsoft Failover Cluster with Two Nodes

## Host Names Assigned to Network Adapters

Each of the physical IP addresses of the network adapters must have a corresponding host name. For example, on the left-hand node in the figure above, you might assign the IP addresses of the public and private network adapters as follows:

IP Addresses and Host Names

Network Adapter	IP Address	Host Name
Adapter 1 (private network)	10.1.1.1	clusA_priv
Adapter 3 (heartbeat network)	192.168.1.1	clusA

### ⚠ Caution

- The IP address and host name of the **public** network adapter is also the IP address and name of the machine. In our example, this means that the machine that is the cluster node on the left in the figure has the name `clusA`.
- Do **not** confuse the **host name** with the **computer name**. Each node also has a computer name, which is usually the same as the host name. The computer name is displayed in the node column of the [Failover Cluster Management](#). However, it is **not** required for the TCP/IP communication in the cluster. When you configure IP addresses and corresponding names, keep in mind that it is the **host names** that are important for the cluster, not the computer names.

## Virtual IP Addresses Assigned to Cluster Groups

After you have installed the SAP system and fully configured the cluster, the critical system resources are bound together in two different groups or three different groups, if **Enqueue Replicator 2** is used.

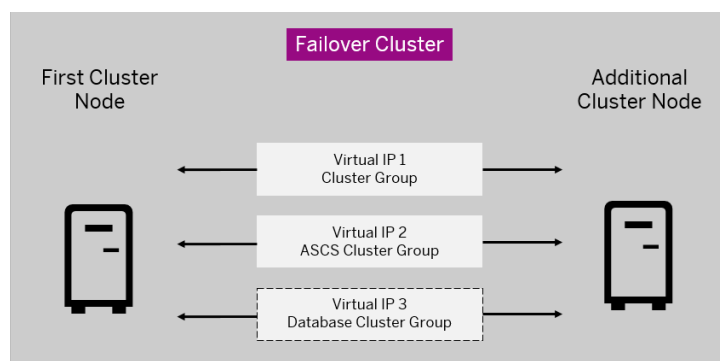
After you have installed the SAP system and fully configured the cluster, the critical system resources are bound together in two different **groups**.

Each of these groups requires a virtual IP address and network name that is permanently mapped to the group and not to a particular node. The advantage of this is that, whenever a group is moved between nodes, its IP address and network name move together with the group.

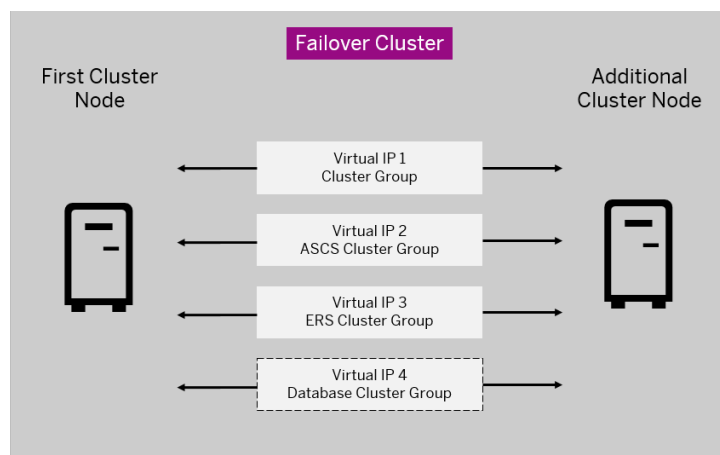
An HA configuration has the following groups:

- SAP cluster group for each clustered SAP system
- SAP cluster group containing the ERS for each clustered SAP system (only applies if **Enqueue Replicator 2** is used).
- Cluster group

The following figure illustrates how the virtual IP addresses of the SAP group can move from one node to the other during a failover.



Failover of Virtual IP Addresses for SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1



Failover of Virtual IP Addresses for ABAP Platform 1809 or higher

## 12.1.2.5 Obtaining IP Addresses for a Microsoft Failover Cluster Configuration

This chapter describes how to obtain the IP addresses for the network adapters (cards) that are required to install and run your high-availability system.

### Context

For a clustered system, you have to configure IP addresses correctly. During the installation procedure you have to assign at least seven IP addresses and host names. You normally obtain these names and addresses from the system administrator.

### Procedure

Ask the system administrator to give you the addresses and host names listed in the tables below, which show an example for a configuration with one Microsoft failover cluster with two nodes. You need to enter the addresses and host names later during the installation process.

The column *Defined During* indicates at which stage of the installation of the operating system and the SAP system the addresses are defined in the system.

#### ⚠ Caution

Use the names **exactly** as specified by the system administrator.

#### i Note

In the following tables we are still using the terminology cluster group, and not the Windows Server terminology Roles.

Physical IP Addresses

Component	Example for Physical IP Address	Example for Physical Host Name	Purpose	Defined During
First cluster node: adapter for heartbeat network	10.1.1.1	clusA_priv	Address for internode communication on the heartbeat network	Windows installation

Component	Example for Physical IP Address	Example for Physical Host Name	Purpose	Defined During
First cluster node: adapter for public network	129.20.5.1	clusA	Address of the first cluster node for communication with application servers and LAN (this is the same as the address of the first cluster node)	Windows installation
Additional cluster node: adapter for heartbeat network	10.1.1.2	clusB_priv	Address for internode communication on the heartbeat network	Windows installation
Additional cluster node: adapter for public network	129.20.5.2	clusB	Address of the additional cluster node for communication with application servers and LAN (this is the same as the address of the additional cluster node)	Windows installation

#### Virtual IP Addresses

Component	Example for Virtual IP Address	Example for Host Name	Purpose	Defined During
Cluster group	129.20.5.3	clusgrp	Virtual address and name of the cluster group. It identifies the cluster and is used for administration purposes.	Failover cluster software configuration
Database cluster group	129.20.5.4	dbgrp	Virtual address and name for accessing the group of database resources, regardless of the node it is running on	Execution of HA-wizard or database-specific cluster scripts
SAP cluster group (ASCS)	129.20.5.5	ascsgrp	Virtual address and name for accessing the group of ASCS resources, regardless of the node it is running on	Configuration of SAP system for high availability with the software provisioning manager on the first node



Component	Example for Virtual IP Address	Example for Host Name	Purpose	Defined During
SAP cluster group (ERS)	129.20.5.6	ersgrp	Virtual address and name for accessing the group of ERS resources, regardless of the node it is running on (only applies if Enqueue Replicator 2 is used)	Configuration of SAP system for high availability with the software provisioning manager on the first node

## 12.1.3 Preparation

This section provides information about how to prepare the installation of the SAP system for Microsoft Failover Clustering. For a complete list of all steps, see section [Preparation](#) in the [Installation Checklist for a High-Availability System \[page 181\]](#).

1. You check that you have completed the same [preparations \[page 65\]](#) as for a non-HA system.
2. To make sure that all preparation steps have been correctly performed, check that the storage resources are available to all cluster nodes. If you want to run the CSD option, check if you can move the disk resources from one cluster node to another so that they are accessible from a single node at any time. If you want to run the FSC option, check if the external file share is accessible by your installation user from all cluster nodes.

## 12.1.4 Installation

The following sections provide information about how to install the SAP system in a high-availability environment. For a complete list of all steps, see section [Installation](#) in the [Installation Checklist for a High-Availability System \[page 181\]](#).

You have the following options to install the database instance:

- CSD (Cluster Shared Disk)
  - You use a high available database outside the cluster used for the ASCS instance. This scenario requires a shared disk for the ASCS instance and requires an additional cluster used for the database which may also require shared disks.
  - You install the database on a shared disk in the same cluster used for the ASCS instance.
- FSC (File Share Cluster)
  - You use a high available database outside the cluster used for the ASCS instance. This scenario does not require shared disks for the ASCS instance and requires an additional cluster used for the database which may require shared disks.

### i Note

The user starting the software provisioning manager must have full access rights on the file share \  
\<sapglobalhost>\sapmnt.

## 12.1.4.1 Configuring the First Cluster Node

At the beginning of the installation with software provisioning manager, you will be asked to choose between FSC and CSD installation option. For more information, see [Installation \[page 201\]](#).

When you run the *First Cluster Node* option, the software provisioning manager:

- Creates the `saploc` share, pointing to a local disk
- Creates the `sapmnt` share, pointing to a local disk if the CSD option is used, or to the external file share if the FSC option is used
- Installs the ABAP central services instance (ASCS) and prepares this host as the SAP global host

### i Note

**ASCS instance with new “Standalone Enqueue Server 2” versus ASCS instance with classic “Standalone Enqueue Server”:**

- **SAP systems based on ABAP Platform 1809 or higher:** By default, the ASCS instance is installed with the new Standalone Enqueue Server 2. From a Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 perspective, the installation procedure for the ASCS instance with “Standalone Enqueue Server 2” is the same as for the ASCS instance with the classic “Standalone Enqueue Server”, there are no additional or different installation parameters.

For more information, see the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at ► [Application Server ABAP Infrastructure](#) ► [Components of the Application Server for ABAP](#) ► [SAP Lock Concept](#) ► [Standalone Enqueue Server 2](#) ►.

- **SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (based on SAP NetWeaver 7.5):** The ASCS instance is installed with the classic “Standalone Enqueue Server” by default. You **cannot** switch to the new “Standalone Enqueue Server 2” after the installation has completed.

Since - from a Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 perspective - the “Standalone Enqueue Server 2” is installed with the ASCS instance the same way as the classic “Standalone Enqueue Server”, both are abbreviated as “Standalone Enqueue Server” in this documentation.

- Creates the SAP cluster group and adds the ASCS instance to the SAP cluster group
- Installs the enqueue replication server instance (ERS instance) for the ASCS instance

### i Note

**ERS instance with new “Enqueue Replicator 2” versus ERS instance with classic “Enqueue Replication Server”:**

- **SAP systems based on ABAP Platform 1809 or higher:** By default, the ERS instance is installed with the new “Enqueue Replicator 2”. From a Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 perspective, the installation procedure for the ERS instance with the “Enqueue Replicator 2” is the same as for the ERS instance with the classic “Enqueue Replication Server”, there are no additional or different installation parameters.

For more information, see the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at ► [Application Server ABAP Infrastructure](#) ► [Components of the Application Server for ABAP](#) ► [Standalone Enqueue Server 2](#) ► and ► [Application Server ABAP Infrastructure](#) ► [Components of the Application Server for ABAP](#) ► [Standalone Enqueue Server 2](#) ► [High Availability with Standalone Enqueue Server 2](#) ►.

- **SAP systems based on SAP BW/4HANA 1.0 SR1 (based on SAP NetWeaver 7.5):** The ERS instance is installed with the classic “Enqueue Replication Server” by default. You **cannot** switch to the new “ Enqueue Replicator 2 ” after the installation has completed.

Since - from a Software Provisioning Manager 2.0 perspective - the “Enqueue Replicator 2” is installed with the ERS instance the same way as the classic “Enqueue Replication Server”, both are abbreviated as “ERS instance” in this documentation.

- Installs the SAP Host Agent

### ⚠ Caution

When you reboot during the conversion to Failover Clustering, resources fail over to the other cluster node. Therefore, after each reboot you have to return the system to the state it was in before the reboot.

## Prerequisites

- You are logged on to the first cluster node as domain administrator or as a domain user who has the required administration rights. For a list of the required permissions, see [Performing a Domain Installation without being a Domain Administrator \[page 162\]](#).
- CSD: You must install the ASCS instance on a shared disk, and the ERS instance and SAP Host Agent on a local disk.  
FSC: You must install the ASCS instance on a local disk, like ERS instance and SAP Host Agent.

### i Note

If you are installing SAP NetWeaver 7.5 Process Integration (PI) system, it is mandatory to use different shared disks for the ASCS and the SCS instance if you're using a shared disk cluster. In case you use a File Share Cluster, you have to use different `sapmnt` shares for both instances.

- If you select the FSC option at the beginning of the installation, the global parts of a SAP system are stored on an external file share. The ASCS instance, the ERS instance, and SAP Host Agent are installed on a local disk.

## Procedure


1. [Run the software provisioning manager \[page 95\]](#) and on the *Welcome* screen, choose ► *<Product>* ► *<Database>* ► *SAP Systems* ► *<System>* ► *High-Availability System* ► *First Cluster Node* ►.

### i Note

If the software provisioning manager prompts you to log off from your system, log off and log on again.

2. Enter the required parameter values.

#### **i** Note

- For more information about the input parameters, position the cursor on a parameter and press **F1** in the software provisioning manager.
- If you have a Microsoft cluster configuration with more than two nodes in one cluster, apply SAP Note [1634991](#) .

## More Information

[Moving Cluster Groups, or Services and Applications, or Roles \[page 208\]](#)

## 12.1.4.2 Installing the Database Instance

This procedure describes how to install the database instance.

### Prerequisites

- The SAP cluster group is *Online* on the first cluster node.

### Procedure

Perform the following steps on the **first** cluster node.

1. [Run the software provisioning manager \[page 95\]](#) and on the *Welcome* screen, choose **> <Product>**  
**> <Database>** **> SAP Systems** **> <System>** **> High-Availability System** **> Database Instance** **>**.
2. Follow the instructions in the software provisioning manager dialogs and enter the required parameter values.

#### **i** Note

For more information about the input parameters, position the cursor on a parameter and press the **F1** key in the software provisioning manager.

## 12.1.4.3 Configuring the Additional Cluster Node

### Prerequisites

- You have already performed the [First Cluster Node \[page 202\]](#) option.

### Context

When you run the [Additional Cluster Node](#) option it:

- Configures the additional cluster node to run the SAP cluster group
- Creates the `saploc` share, pointing to a local disk
- If you chose the FSC option:  
Installs the ASCS instance
- Installs the enqueue replication server instance (ERS) for the ASCS instance
- Installs the SAP Host Agent

#### ⚠ Caution

You must install the instances and SAP Host Agent on a local disk.

### Procedure

1. [Run the software provisioning manager \[page 95\]](#) and on the [Welcome](#) screen, choose ► [<Product>](#) ► [<Database>](#) ► [SAP Systems](#) ► [<System>](#) ► [High-Availability System](#) ► [Additional Cluster Node](#) ►.

#### i Note

If the software provisioning manager prompts you to log off from your system, log off and log on again.

2. Enter the required parameter values.

#### i Note

For more information about the input parameters, position the cursor on the parameter and press F1 in the software provisioning manager.

#### ⚠ Caution

Do not accept default values, as they may come from SAP systems that already exist on the cluster.

## Related Information

[Moving Cluster Groups, or Services and Applications, or Roles \[page 208\]](#)

### 12.1.4.4 Installing the Primary Application Server Instance

#### Use

You have the following options to install the primary application server instance:

- You install the primary application server instance on a cluster node.
- You install the primary application server instance on a host outside of Microsoft Failover Cluster.

#### Procedure

1. [Run the software provisioning manager \[page 95\]](#) and on the *Welcome* screen, choose ► *<Product>* ► *<Database>* ► *SAP Systems* ► *<System>* ► *High-Availability System* ► *Primary Application Server Instance* ►.
2. If the software provisioning manager prompts you to log off, choose *OK* and log on again.
3. Follow the instructions in the software provisioning manager dialogs and enter the required parameter values.

##### i Note

- For more information about the input parameters, position the cursor on a parameter and press **F1** in the software provisioning manager.
- If you install the primary application server instance on an cluster node, make sure that on the screen *General SAP System Parameters* for the:
  - *Profile Directory*, you use the **UNC** path (not the local path) of the SAPGLOBALHOST host name, for example:, for example:  
\\<SAPGLOBALHOST>\sapmnt\<SAPSID>\SYS\profile.  
If CSD option is used, the virtual host name of the ASCS instance is the same as the SAPGLOBALHOST host name.  
If FSC option is used the virtual host name of the ASCS instance is different from the SAPGLOBALHOST host name.

##### i Note

If you are installing a SAP NetWeaver 7.5 Process Integration (PI) system, make sure that the virtual host names for the ASCS instance and the SCS instance are different.

- *Installation Drive*, you choose the local disk where you want to install the primary application server instance.

4. Check that the primary application server instance is running.

## 12.1.4.5 Installing the Additional Application Server Instance

You have to install at least one additional application server instance for Microsoft Failover Clustering.

You have the following options, to install the additional application server instance:

- You install the additional application server instance on a cluster node.
- You install the additional application server instance on a host outside of the failover cluster.

### Procedure

1. Run the software provisioning manager [page 95] and on the *Welcome* screen, choose ► *<Product>* ► *<Database>* ► *SAP Systems* ► *<System>* ► *High-Availability System* ► *Additional Application Server Instance* ►.
2. If the software provisioning manager prompts you to log off, choose *OK* and log on again.
3. Follow the instructions in the software provisioning manager dialogs and enter the required parameter values.

#### i Note

- For more information about the input parameters, position the cursor on a parameter and press **F1** in the software provisioning manager.
- If you install the additional application server instance on an cluster node, make sure that on the screen *General SAP System Parameters* for the:
  - *Profile Directory*, you use the **UNC** path (not the local path) of the SAPGLOBALHOST host name, for example:  
\\<SAPGLOBALHOST>\sapmnt\<SAPSID>\SYS\profile.  
If CSD option is used, the virtual host name of the ASCS instance is the same as the SAPGLOBALHOST host name.  
If FSC option is used, the virtual host name of the ASCS instance is different from the SAPGLOBALHOST host name.
  - *Installation Drive*, you choose the **local** disk where you want to install the additional application server instance.
  - *Additional application server instance*, you enter the **same** instance number as for the primary application server.

4. When you have finished, change the instance profile of the additional application server instance so that the number of its work processes equals the number of work processes of the primary application server instance.
5. If required, install more additional application server instances outside of the failover cluster.

### i Note

Make sure that on the screen *General SAP System Parameters* for the *Profile Directory*, you use the UNC path of the **virtual** ASCS host name, for example:

```
\\<SAPGLOBALHOST>\sapmnt\<SAPSID>\SYS\profile.
```

In a HA-system, the virtual host name of the ASCS instance is the same as the SAP global host name.

## 12.1.5 Post-Installation

To complete and check the installation of the SAP system for a high-availability configuration, you need to perform the following steps:

1. You install the permanent SAP licenses on all cluster nodes.
2. After a new installation of a clustered ASCS instance, make sure that you update the `saprc.dll` (part of the `NTCLUST.SAR`) package in `c:\windows\system32` as soon as possible. For more information, see SAP Note [1596496](#).
3. For information about Rolling Kernel Switch on Windows Failover Clusters, see SAP Note [2199317](#).
4. You perform the post-installation checks for the enqueue replication server.  
For more information, see the [SAP Online Documentation \[page 18\]](#) at:  
[► Application Server ► Application Server Infrastructure ► Components of SAP NetWeaver Application Server ► Standalone Enqueue Server ► Installing the Standalone Enqueue Server ► ► Replication Server: Check Installation ►](#)
5. If required, you perform the general [post-installation steps \[page 116\]](#) listed in this guide.

## 12.1.6 Additional Information

The following sections provide additional information about:

- [Moving Cluster Groups, or Services and Applications, or Roles \[page 208\]](#)
- [Starting and Stopping the SAP System in a Microsoft Failover Cluster Configuration \[page 209\]](#).

### 12.1.6.1 Moving Cluster Groups, or Services and Applications, or Roles

#### Use

When you reboot during the conversion to Microsoft Failover Clustering, cluster resources fail over to the other cluster node. Therefore, you have to return the system to the state it was in before the reboot, and move the resources back to the original node.



To move the database, ERS (only applies if Enqueue Replicator 2 is used), or ASCS from one cluster node to the other, you use the following:

To move the database, or ASCS from one cluster node to the other, you use either the Failover Cluster Manager tool or PowerShell.

#### **i Note**

Microsoft changed the term “cluster groups” in the Failover Cluster Manager tool to Roles. If you use PowerShell, the term “cluster group” is still used for all cluster operations.

## **Procedure**

### **Moving Roles, or Services and Applications, or Groups**

To move the roles or services and applications, proceed as follows:

- 1. To move a role, open PowerShell in elevated mode, and enter the following command:  
`move-clustergroup "<role name>"`
- 2. Repeat these steps for each role that you want to move.
- **Moving Roles or Cluster Groups**  
To move the roles proceed as follows:
  1. To move a role, open PowerShell in elevated mode, and enter the following command:  
`move-clustergroup -name "<role name>"`
  2. Repeat these steps for each role that you want to move. If you have more than 2 nodes in your cluster, you can specify the specific cluster node for the move:  
`move-clustergroup -name "<role name>" -Node "<cluster node name>" -Wait 0`

## **12.1.6.2 Starting and Stopping the SAP System in a Microsoft Failover Cluster Configuration**

An SAP System in an HA configuration is typically configured into at least two HA groups: one cluster resource group contains the database resources, the other group contains the ASCS instance, and a third group contains the ERS instance (only applies if Enqueue Replicator 2 is used).

#### **i Note**

When starting a whole SAP system, you first need to start the database instance, the ASCS instance, the ERS instance (only applies if Enqueue Replicator 2 is used) and then the remaining SAP instances.

When stopping a whole SAP system, you first need first to stop all SAP instances and then the database instance.

With the [SAP MMC](#), or [SAPControl](#) you can start and stop all SAP instances whether they are clustered or not, except the database instance.

With certain HA administration tools ([Cluster Administrator](#) , [Failover Cluster Manager](#) , or [PowerShell](#)), you can only start or stop clustered SAP instances, such as the ASCS instance, ERS instance (only applies if Enqueue Replicator 2 is used), or the database instance.

## Procedure

### Starting and Stopping a Complete System or a Single Instance with SAP MMC or SAPControl

With the [SAP MMC](#), or the command line tool [SAPControl](#), you can start or stop the complete SAP system or a single clustered or non-clustered SAP instance, except the database instance.

To start or stop the database instance, you have to use the tools described in “Starting and Stopping the clustered ASCS, ERS (only applies if Enqueue Replicator 2 is used), and Database Instance”.

For more information about [SAP MMC](#) or [SAPControl](#), see [Starting and Stopping the SAP System \[page 167\]](#).

#### Note

- To use [SAP MMC](#) or [SAPControl](#) for starting or stopping a clustered SAP instance, the "SAP <SAPSID> <Instance\_Number> Service" resource of the clustered instance must be online. Therefore, SAP recommends keeping the "SAP <SAPSID> <Instance\_Number> Service" cluster resource always online, and using the [SAP MMC](#) or [SAPControl](#) to start or stop a clustered instance.
- You can also start [SAPControl](#) in the [PowerShell](#).

### Starting and Stopping the clustered ASCS, ERS (only applies if Enqueue Replicator 2 is used), and Database Instance

With certain HA administration tools, such as [PowerShell](#), or [Failover Cluster Manager](#) , you can only start or stop clustered SAP instances, such as the ASCS instance, ERS instance (only applies if Enqueue Replicator 2 is used), or the database instance. For all other non-clustered instances, such as additional application server instances or the primary application server instance, you must use the SAP MMC or [SAPControl](#).

- Using [PowerShell](#)  
To start or stop the clustered ASCS instance, ERS instance (only applies if Enqueue Replicator 2 is used), or the database instance with [PowerShell](#) do the following:
  1. To start the clustered database instance, open [PowerShell](#) in elevated mode, and enter the following command:  
**start-clusterresource <database resource>**
  2. To start the clustered ASCS instance, open [PowerShell](#) in elevated mode, and enter the following command:  
**start-clusterresource "SAP <SAPSID> <Instance\_Number> Instance"**
  3. To start the clustered ERS instance, open [PowerShell](#) in elevated mode, and enter the following command:  
**start-clusterresource "SAP <SAPSID> ERS <Instance\_Number> Instance"**
  4. To stop the clustered ASCS instance, open [PowerShell](#) in elevated mode, and enter the following command:  
**stop-clusterresource "SAP <SAPSID> <Instance\_Number> Instance"**
  5. To stop the clustered ERS instance, open [PowerShell](#) in elevated mode, and enter the following command:  
**stop-clusterresource "SAP <SAPSID> ERS <Instance\_Number> Instance"**

6. To stop the clustered database instance, open *PowerShell* in elevated mode, and enter the following command:

```
stop-clusterresource <database resource>
```

- Using the *Failover Cluster Manager*

For all other non-clustered instances, such as additional application server instances or the primary application server instance, you must use the *SAP MMC* or *SAPControl*.



1. Start the *Failover Cluster Manager* by choosing **Start** > **Administrative Tools** > *Failover Cluster Manager*.
2. To start the ASCS instance, select the relevant service and application *SAP <SAPSID>*. In the right-hand pane, under *Other Resources*, right-click the resource *SAP <SAPSID> <Instance\_Number> Instance*, and choose *Bring this resource online*.
3. To start the ERS instance, select the relevant service and application *SAP <SAPSID> ERS*. In the right-hand pane, under *Other Resources*, right-click the resource *SAP <SAPSID> ERS <Instance\_Number> Instance*, and choose *Bring this resource online*.
4. To stop the ERS instance, select the relevant service and application *SAP <SAPSID> ERS*. In the right-hand pane, under *Other Resources*, right-click the resource *SAP <SAPSID> ERS <Instance\_Number> Instance*, and choose *Take this resource offline*.
5. To stop the ASCS instance, select the relevant service and application *SAP <SAPSID>*. In the right-hand pane, under *Other Resources*, right-click the resource *SAP <SAPSID> <Instance\_Number> Instance*, and choose *Take this resource offline*.

# Important Disclaimers and Legal Information

## Hyperlinks

Some links are classified by an icon and/or a mouseover text. These links provide additional information.

About the icons:

- Links with the icon  : You are entering a Web site that is not hosted by SAP. By using such links, you agree (unless expressly stated otherwise in your agreements with SAP) to this:
  - The content of the linked-to site is not SAP documentation. You may not infer any product claims against SAP based on this information.
  - SAP does not agree or disagree with the content on the linked-to site, nor does SAP warrant the availability and correctness. SAP shall not be liable for any damages caused by the use of such content unless damages have been caused by SAP's gross negligence or willful misconduct.
- Links with the icon  : You are leaving the documentation for that particular SAP product or service and are entering an SAP-hosted Web site. By using such links, you agree that (unless expressly stated otherwise in your agreements with SAP) you may not infer any product claims against SAP based on this information.

## Videos Hosted on External Platforms

Some videos may point to third-party video hosting platforms. SAP cannot guarantee the future availability of videos stored on these platforms. Furthermore, any advertisements or other content hosted on these platforms (for example, suggested videos or by navigating to other videos hosted on the same site), are not within the control or responsibility of SAP.

## Beta and Other Experimental Features

Experimental features are not part of the officially delivered scope that SAP guarantees for future releases. This means that experimental features may be changed by SAP at any time for any reason without notice. Experimental features are not for productive use. You may not demonstrate, test, examine, evaluate or otherwise use the experimental features in a live operating environment or with data that has not been sufficiently backed up.

The purpose of experimental features is to get feedback early on, allowing customers and partners to influence the future product accordingly. By providing your feedback (e.g. in the SAP Community), you accept that intellectual property rights of the contributions or derivative works shall remain the exclusive property of SAP.

## Example Code

Any software coding and/or code snippets are examples. They are not for productive use. The example code is only intended to better explain and visualize the syntax and phrasing rules. SAP does not warrant the correctness and completeness of the example code. SAP shall not be liable for errors or damages caused by the use of example code unless damages have been caused by SAP's gross negligence or willful misconduct.

## Bias-Free Language

SAP supports a culture of diversity and inclusion. Whenever possible, we use unbiased language in our documentation to refer to people of all cultures, ethnicities, genders, and abilities.



© 2023 SAP SE or an SAP affiliate company. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or for any purpose without the express permission of SAP SE or an SAP affiliate company. The information contained herein may be changed without prior notice.

Some software products marketed by SAP SE and its distributors contain proprietary software components of other software vendors. National product specifications may vary.

These materials are provided by SAP SE or an SAP affiliate company for informational purposes only, without representation or warranty of any kind, and SAP or its affiliated companies shall not be liable for errors or omissions with respect to the materials. The only warranties for SAP or SAP affiliate company products and services are those that are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services, if any. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty.

SAP and other SAP products and services mentioned herein as well as their respective logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of SAP SE (or an SAP affiliate company) in Germany and other countries. All other product and service names mentioned are the trademarks of their respective companies.

Please see <https://www.sap.com/about/legal/trademark.html> for additional trademark information and notices.